Intel386™ MicroComputer Model 302

Board Technical Reference Manual





Order Number: 505067-002 Revision F



Intel386<sup>™</sup> MicroComputer Model 302 Board Technical Reference Manual

> Order Number: 505067-002 Revision F



#### WARNING

This equipment has been tested with a Class B computing device and has been found to comply with the limits for a class B computing device, pursuant to subpart J of part 15 FCC rules. Only peripherals (computer input/output devices, terminals, printers, etc.) which comply with the class B limits may be attached to this computer product. Operation with non-compliant peripherals is likely to result in interference to radio and TV reception.

All cables used to connect to peripherals must be shielded and grounded. Operation with cables, connected to peripherals, which are not shielded and grounded may result in interference to radio and TV reception.

This equipment meets or exceeds requirements for safety in the US (UL 478 5th Edition), Canada (CSA C22.2 No. 220), and Europe (IEC 380, IEC 435, IEC 950, and VDE 0806).

This equipment has been tested for radio frequency emissions and has been verified to meet VDE 0871 Class B.

This digital apparatus does not exceed the Class B limits for radio noise emissions set out in the radio interference regulations of the Canadian Department of Communications.

Ce dispositif digital, s'il est utilise suivant les instructions et recommandations du constructeur, ne depasse pas les limites de la Classe B pour le bruit des frequences radio, etablies par les Regles sur l'interference radio du Ministere Canadian des Communications.

#### **RADIO FREQUENCY INTERFERENCE NOTICE**

This equipment generates and uses radio frequency energy and if not installed properly, that is, in strict accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, may cause interference to radio and television reception. It has been type-tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B computing device in accordance with the specifications in Subpart J of Part 15 FCC rules, which are designed to provide reasonable protection against interference in a residential installation. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If the equipment does cause interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient the receiving antenna.
- Relocate the system with respect to the receiver.
- Move the system away from the receiver.
- Plug the system into a different outlet so that the system and receiver are on different branch circuits.
- Move the cables connected to the system to minimize the interference.
- Tighten all screws on cables and the system housing.
- Install blank panels, originally supplied with the system, in all unused card slots.

If necessary the user should consult the dealer or an experienced radio/television technician for additional suggestions. The user may find the following booklet, prepared by the Federal Communications Commission, helpful:

"How to Identify and Resolve Radio-TV Interference Problems"

This booklet is available from the U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C. 20402. Stock No. 004-00398-5.

Additional copies of this manual or other Intel literature may be obtained from:

Intel Corporation Literature Sales P.O. Box 58130 Santa Clara, CA 95052-8130

Intel Corporation makes no warranty of any kind with regard to this material, including, but not limited to, the implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose. Intel Corporation assumes no responsibility for any errors that may appear in this document. Intel Corporation makes no commitment to update nor to keep current the information contained in this document.

Intel Corporation assumes no responsibility for the use of any circuitry other than circuitry embodied in an Intel product. No other circuit patent licenses are implied.

Intel software and firmware products are copyrighted by and shall remain the property of Intel Corporation. Use, duplication, or disclosure is subject to restrictions stated in Intel's Software License Agreement, or in the case of software delivered to the U.S. government, in accordance with the software license agreement as defined in FAR 52.227-7013.

No part of this document may be copied or reproduced in any form or by any means without prior written consent of Intel Corporation.

Intel Corporation retains the right to make changes to these specifications at any time, without notice. Contact your local sales office to obtain the latest specifications before placing your order.

The following are trademarks of Intel Corporation and its affiliates, and may be used only to identify Intel products:

Above BITBUS COMMputer CREDIT Data Pipeline ETOX Genius i486 i860 \$ pe I2CE ICE iCE	iMDDX iMMX Inboard Insite Intel® int <sub>e</sub> I® Intel376 Intel386 int <sub>e</sub> IBOS Intel Certified Intelevision int <sub>e</sub> ligent Identifier int <sub>e</sub> ligent Programming Inteliec®	iRMX iSBC iSBX iSDM iSXM KEPROM Library Manager MAPNET MCS® Megachassis MICROMAINFRAME MULTIBUS MULTIBUS MULTICHANNEL MULTIMODULE	Promware QueX QUEST Quick-Erase Quick Pulse Programming Ripplemode RMX/80 RUPI Seamless SLD SugarCube UPI VLSiCEL 376
I2CE	inteligent Identifier	MULTIBUS	UPI
ICE	inteligent Programming	MULTICHANNEL	VLSICEL
iDBP iDIS iLBX <sup>i</sup> m <sup>®</sup>	iPAT iPDS iPSC® iRMK	OTP PC BUBBLE Plug-A-Bubble PROMPT	387 387SX 4-SITE 486

MULTIBUS is a patented Intel bus.

IBM is a registered trademark of International Business Machines, Inc.

PC, XT, and AT are trademarks of International Business Machines, Inc.

Microsoft, MS-DOS, OS/2, and XENIX are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Multiplan is a trademark of Microsoft Corporation.

UNIX is a trademark of AT&T.

Lotus 1-2-3 and Symphony are registered trademarks of Lotus Development Corporation.

Framework II and dBASE III PLUS are registered trademarks of Ashton-Tate.

MultiMate is a trademark of Ashton-Tate.

Centronics is a trademark of Centronics Data Computer Corporation.

Copyright © 1989,1990 Intel Corporation

REV.	REVISION HISTORY	DATE
-001	Preliminary Release	11/89
-002	Original Issue (Release 1.0)	1/90

# Contents

### **About This Manual**

Purpose	xxvii
Library Plan	xxviii
Audience	
Organization	
How to Obtain More Information	
Notational Conventions	xxxi
Related Publications	xxxiv

### 1 Board Overview

1.1	Introduction	1-1
1.2	Overview	1-1
1.3	Feature Set Description	1-6
1.3.1	Central Processing Unit (CPU)	1-6
1.3.2	Memory	1-6
1.3.3	AT32 Bus	1-6
1.3.4	Intel ISA Bus	1-7
1.3.5	Programmable Interval Timer	1-7
1.3.6	Programmable Interrupt Controller	1-7
1.3.7	DMA Controller	1-7
1.3.8	Real-time CMOS Clock	1-7
1.3.9	Input/Output Expansion Slots	1-8
1.3.10	Input/Output Ports	1-8
1.3.11	Keyboard Interface	1-8
1.3.12	Special Board Interfaces	1-8
1.3.13	Firmware	1-9

### 2 Central Processing Core

2.1	Introduction	2-1
2.2	Overview	2-1
2.3	CPU	2-3
2.3.1	Real Mode Architecture	2-3
2.3.2	Protected Mode Architecture	2-3
2.3.3	Virtual-8086 Mode	2-4
2.3.4	CPU Signals	2-4
2.3.5	Basic CPU Bus Operations	2-7
2.4	Numeric Coprocessor	2-10
2.4.1	387 <sup>™</sup> Numeric Coprocessor Data Types	2-10
2.4.2	387™ Coprocessor Programming Interface	2-11
2.4.3	Weitek 3167 Interface	2-13
2.5	Cache Memory and Tag	2-14
2.5.1	Cache Memory	2-15
2.5.2	Cache Tag Memory	2-15
2.5.3	Cache Memory Read Requests	2-15
2.5.4	Cache Memory Write Requests	2-16
2.6	Address and Data Buffers	2-16
2.7	CPU/Cache Control	2-16

### 3 Onboard Memory

3.1	Introduction	3-1
3.2	Onboard Memory Overview	3-1
3.3	302 Board DRAM	3-3
3.4	Configuring AT32 Memory	3-4
3.5	DRAM Refresh	3-5

### 4 Intel AT32 Bus Interface

4.1	Introduction	4-1
	AT32 Bus Overview	4-1

### 5 Intel ISA Bus

5.1	Introduction	5-1
5.2	Bus Agents	5-1
5.2.1	Configuring Bus Agents	5-2
5.2.2	Agent Functional Model	5-3
5.2.3	General ISA Bus Attributes	5-4
5.3	Signal Groups	5-5
5.3.1	Address Signal Group	5-6
5.3.2	Data Signal Group	5-8
5.3.3	Cycle Control Signal Group	5-9
5.3.4	Central Control Signal Group	5-11
5.3.5	Interrupt Signal Group	5-13
5.3.6	Direct Memory Access Signal Group	5-13
5.3.7	Power Group	5-14
6	8254 Programmable Interval Timer	
6.1	Introduction	6-1
6.2	Counter Description	6-2
6.2.1	Control and Status Registers	6-4
6.2.2	Counting Element (CE)	6-4
6.3	Programming the PIT	6-5
6.3.1	Control Register (043H)	6-5
	Read/Write Counter Command	6-7
	Latch-Counter Command	6-7
	Read-back Command	6-8
7	8259 Programmable Interrupt Controllers	

7.1	Introduction	7-1
7.2	Interrupt Controller Architecture	7-4
7.2.1	Interrupt Request Register (IRR) and In-service Register (ISR)	7-4
7.2.2	Interrupt Mask Register	7-4
7.2.3	Priority Resolver	7-4
7.3	Interrupts	7-5
7.3.1	Maskable Interrupts	7-5
7.3.2	Non-maskable Interrupts	7-7

### 7 8259 Programmable Interrupt Controllers (continued)

7.4	Programming the PIC	7-8
7.4.1	Initialization Command Word	7-9
7.4.2	Operational Command Word	7-15

### 8 Direct Memory Access (DMA)

8.1	Introduction	8-1
8.2	DMA Operation	8-4
8.2.1	Idle Cycle	8-4
8.2.2	Active Cycle	8-4
	Single-Transfer Mode	8-5
	Block-Transfer Mode	8-5
	Demand-Transfer Mode	8-5
	Cascade Mode	8-6
8.3	Transfer Types	8-6
8.4	DMA Channels	8-7
8.5	Programming The DMA Controllers	8-8
8.6	DMA Internal Registers	8-9
8.6.1	Address and Count Registers	8-10
	Current Address Register	8-11
	Current Word-Count Register	8-11
	Base Address and Base Word-Count Registers	8-11
8.6.2	Program-control Registers	8-12
8.6.3	Command Register	8-12
8.6.4	Mode Register	8-14
8.6.5	Request Register	8-15
8.6.6	Mask Register	8-15
8.6.7	Status Register	8-17
8.6.8	Temporary Register	8-19
8.6.9	Non-register Program Controls	8-19
8.7	Page Registers	8-20

# 9 1287 Real-time Clock (RTC)

9.1	Introduction	9-1
9.2	RTC RAM I/O Operations	9-1
9.3	RTC Addressable Locations	9-3
9.3.1	Time, Calendar, and Alarm Bytes	9-5
9.4	Status Registers	9-7
9.4.1	Status Register A	9-7
9.4.2	Status Register B	9-8
9.4.3	Status Register C	9-10
9.4.4	Status Register D	9-11
9.5	Configuration Bytes	9-11
9.5.1	Diagnostic Status Byte	9-12
9.5.2	Shutdown Status Byte	9-13
9.5.3	Floppy Disk Drive Type Byte	9-14
9.5.4	Fixed Disk Drive Type Byte	9-15
9.5.5	Equipment Byte	9-16
9.5.6	Low and High Base Memory Bytes	9-17
9.5.7	Low and High Memory Expansion Bytes	9-17
9.5.8	Drive C Extended Byte	9-18
9.5.9	Drive D Extended Byte	9-18
9.5.10	Feature Installed Byte	9-18
9.5.11	Fixed Disk Type 48 Parameters	9-19
9.5.12	Shadow and Setup Byte	9-20
9.5.13	CMOS RAM Checksum	9-20
9.5.14	Low and High Extended Memory Byte	9-21
9.5.15	Date Century Byte	9-21
9.5.16	Setup Information Byte	9-22
9.5.17	CPU Speed Byte	9-22
9.5.18	Fixed Disk Type 49 Parameters	9-23

### 10 Communication Ports

Introduction	10-1
Serial Communication Ports	10-1
CPU Interfacing	10-2
Connectors and Pinouts	10-2
Parallel Printer Port	10-2
Programming	10-3
	10-5
	Serial Communication Ports CPU Interfacing Connectors and Pinouts Parallel Printer Port Programming

### 11 Keyboard Controller

11.1	Introduction	11-1
11.2	Keyboard Controller System Interface	11-1
11.2.1	Status Register	11-3
11.2.2	Output Buffer	11-4
11.2.3	Input Buffer	11-4
11.2.4	Input and Output Ports	11-5
11.3	Controller Commands	
11.4	Keyboard Interface	11-7
11.4.1	Keyboard Data Stream	11-8
11.4.2	Receiving Data from the Keyboard	11-9
11.4.3	Sending Data to the Keyboard	11-11
11.5	Keyclick Volume	11-15

### 12 302 Board Special Interfaces

12.1	Introduction	12-1
12.2	Keylock Interface	12-1
12.3	Speaker Interface	12-2
12.4	Reset Interface	12-3

### 13 Power-on Self Test and Setup

13.1	Introduction	13-1
13.2	Power-on Self Test	13-1
13.3	Setup Program Overview	13-2
13.4	Running The SETUP Program	13-3
13.4.1	Moving Through Setup Screen 1	13-5
	Setting System Time	13-5
	Setting System Date	13-5
	Selecting Floppy disk Drive Types	13-6
	Setting Fixed disk Drive Types	13-6
	Setting Base Memory	13-7
	Setting Extended Memory	13-7
	Setting Video Display Controller Type	13-8
	Setting Keyboard Availability	13-9
	Setting CPU Speed	
	Numeric Coprocessor	

### 13 **Power-on Self Test and Setup** (continued)

13.4.2	Moving Through Setup Screen 2	13-10
	Shadowing System BIOS and Video BIOS	
	Cache Memory	13-11
	AT32 I/O	
	Above 16M	13-12
	512–640 K	13-12
	Speaker	13-13
	Enter SETUP	
13.5	Exiting SETUP	13-13
13.6	Error Messages	13-14

### A Specifications

A.1	302 Board Specifications	A-1
		A-2
A.3	302 Board Power Requirements	A-3

### **B** System BIOS Specifications

B.1	Introduction	B-1
B.2	Non-maskable Interrupt (INT 02H)	B-1
B.3	Print Screen (INT 05H)	B-2
B.4	System Timer H/W Interrupt (INT 08H)	B-2
B.5	Keyboard H/W Interrupt (INT 09H)	B-3
B.6	Disk H/W Interrupt (INT 0EH)	B-3
B.7	Video I/O (INT 10H)	B-4
B.7.1	Set Display Mode	B-5
B.7.2	Set Cursor Size	B-6
B.7.3	Set Cursor Position	B-6
B.7.4	Read Cursor Position	B-7
B.7.5	Read Light Pen Position	B-7
B.7.6	Select Active Display Page	B-7
B.7.7	Scroll Window Up	B-8
B.7.8	Scroll Window Down	B-8
B.7.9	Read Attribute/Character at Current Cursor Position	B-9
B.7.10	Write Attribute/Character at Current Cursor Position	B-9
B.7.11	Write Character Only at Current Cursor Position	B-10

# **B** System BIOS Specifications (continued)

B.7.14       Read Dot       B-11         B.7.15       Write Character as Teletype to Active Page       B-11         B.7.16       Get Current Video Mode       B-12         B.7.17       Write String       B-12         B.8       Equipment Determination (INT 11H)       B-13         B.9       Mernory Size Determination (INT 12H)       B-14         B.10       Floppy Disk Drive //O (INT 13H, Part 1)       B-14         B.10.1       Reset Disk Drive       B-15         B.10.2       Read Status       B-16         B.10.3       Disk Read       B-16         B.10.4       Disk Write       B-16         B.10.5       Disk Verify       B-17         B.10.6       Format Disk Track       B-17         B.10.7       Disk Drive Parameters       B-18         B.10.8       Read DASD Type       B-18         B.10.8       Read DASD Type       B-19         B.10.10       Set Media Type for Format       B-19         B.10.11       Set Media Type for Format       B-22         B.11.1       Disk Kool (NIT 13H, Part 2)       B-21         B.11.1       Disk Verify Disk Sectors       B-23         B.11.2       Read Status       B-23 </th <th>B.7.12</th> <th>Set Color Palette</th> <th>B-10</th>	B.7.12	Set Color Palette	B-10
B.7.15       Write Character as Teletype to Active Page.       B-11         B.7.16       Get Current Video Mode       B-12         B.7.17       Write String.       B-13         B.8       Equipment Determination (INT 11H).       B-13         B.9       Memory Size Determination (INT 12H).       B-14         B.10       Floppy Disk Drive I/O (INT 13H, Part 1).       B-14         B.10.1       Reset Disk Drive.       B-15         B.10.2       Read Status.       B-16         B.10.3       Disk Read.       B-16         B.10.4       Disk Verify.       B-17         B.10.5       Disk Verify.       B-17         B.10.6       Format Disk Track.       B-17         B.10.7       Disk Drive Parameters.       B-18         B.10.8       Read DASD Type.       B-18         B.10.9       Disk Change Line Status.       B-19         B.10.10       Set Media Type for Format       B-19         B.10.11       Set Media Type for Format       B-22         B.11.1       Disk Reset       B-22         B.11.1       Disk VO (INT 13H, Part 2)       B-21         B.11.1       Disk I/O (INT 13H, Part 2)       B-21         B.11.2       Read Status.	B.7.13	Write Dot	B-11
B.7.16       Get Current Video Mode       B-12         B.7.17       Write String       B-12         B.8       Equipment Determination (INT 11H)       B-13         B.9       Memory Size Determination (INT 12H)       B-14         B.10       Floppy Disk Drive I/O (INT 13H, Part 1)       B-14         B.10.1       Reset Disk Drive       B-15         B.10.2       Read Status       B-15         B.10.3       Disk Read       B-16         B.10.4       Disk Write       B-16         B.10.5       Disk Verify       B-17         B.10.6       Format Disk Track       B-17         B.10.7       Disk Verify       B-17         B.10.6       Format Disk Track       B-17         B.10.7       Disk Drive Parameters       B-18         B.10.8       Read DASD Type       B-18         B.10.9       Disk Change Line Status       B-19         B.10.11       Set DASD Type for Format       B-22         B.11       Fixed Disk I/O (INT 13H, Part 2)       B-21         B.11.1       Disk Reset       B-22         B.11.2       Read Status       B-23         B.11.3       Read Disk       B-23         B.11.4 <t< td=""><td>B.7.14</td><td>Read Dot</td><td>B-11</td></t<>	B.7.14	Read Dot	B-11
B.7.17       Write String	B.7.15	Write Character as Teletype to Active Page	B-11
B.8         Equipment Determination (INT 11H).         B-13           B.9         Memory Size Determination (INT 12H).         B-14           B.10         Floppy Disk Drive I/O (INT 13H, Part 1).         B-14           B.10.1         Reset Disk Drive I/O (INT 13H, Part 1).         B-14           B.10.2         Read Status.         B-15           B.10.3         Disk Read.         B-16           B.10.4         Disk Write         B-16           B.10.5         Disk Verify.         B-17           B.10.6         Format Disk Track.         B-17           B.10.7         Disk Verify.         B-17           B.10.8         Read DASD Type         B-18           B.10.8         Read DASD Type.         B-18           B.10.9         Disk Change Line Status.         B-19           B.10.10         Set DASD Type for Format.         B-22           B.11         Fixed Disk I/O (INT 13H, Part 2).         B-21           B.11         Fixed Disk I/O (INT 13H, Part 2).         B-22           B.11.3         Read Status.         B-23           B.11.4         Write Disk.         B-23           B.11.4         Write Disk Recatures.         B-24           B.11.6         Format Disk Track. <td>B.7.16</td> <td>Get Current Video Mode</td> <td>B-12</td>	B.7.16	Get Current Video Mode	B-12
B.9       Memory Size Determination (INT 12H)       B-14         B.10       Floppy Disk Drive I/O (INT 13H, Part 1)       B-14         B.10.1       Reset Disk Drive       B-15         B.10.2       Read Status       B-15         B.10.3       Disk Read       B-16         B.10.4       Disk Write       B-16         B.10.3       Disk Read       B-17         B.10.4       Disk Write       B-16         B.10.5       Disk Verify       B-17         B.10.6       Format Disk Track       B-17         B.10.7       Disk Drive Parameters       B-18         B.10.8       Read DASD Type       B-18         B.10.9       Disk Change Line Status       B-19         B.10.10       Set Media Type for Format       B-19         B.10.11       Set Media Type for Format       B-22         B.11.1       Disk Reset       B-23         B.11.2       Read Status       B-23         B.11.3       Read Disk       B-23         B.11.4       Write Disk       B-24         B.11.3       Read Status       B-23         B.11.4       Write Disk       B-23         B.11.5       Verify Disk Sectors       B-24 <td>B.7.17</td> <td></td> <td>B-12</td>	B.7.17		B-12
B.10         Floppy Disk Drive I/O (INT 13H, Part 1)	B.8	Equipment Determination (INT 11H)	B-13
B.10         Floppy Disk Drive I/O (INT 13H, Part 1)	B.9	Memory Size Determination (INT 12H)	B-14
B.10.1       Reset Disk Drive.       B-15         B.10.2       Read Status.       B-15         B.10.3       Disk Read.       B-16         B.10.4       Disk Write       B-16         B.10.5       Disk Verify.       B-17         B.10.6       Format Disk Track.       B-17         B.10.7       Disk Drive Parameters.       B-17         B.10.8       Read DASD Type.       B-18         B.10.9       Disk Change Line Status.       B-19         B.10.10       Set DASD Type for Format       B-20         B.11       Fixed Disk I/O (INT 13H, Part 2)       B-21         B.11.1       Disk Reset       B-22         B.11.2       Read Status.       B-23         B.11.3       Read Disk.       B-23         B.11.4       Write Disk       B-24         B.11.5       Verify Disk Sectors       B-24         B.11.6       Format Disk Parameters.       B-25         B.11.8       Initialize Disk Parameters.       B-25         B.11.9       Disk Read Long       B-25         B.11.1       Disk Read Long.       B-26         B.11.1       Disk Read Long.       B-26         B.11.1       Disk Read Long.	B.10	Floppy Disk Drive I/O (INT 13H, Part 1)	B-14
B.10.3       Disk Read	B.10.1	Reset Disk Drive	B-15
B.10.4       Disk Write       B-16         B.10.5       Disk Verify       B-17         B.10.6       Format Disk Track       B-17         B.10.7       Disk Drive Parameters       B-18         B.10.8       Read DASD Type       B-18         B.10.9       Disk Change Line Status       B-19         B.10.10       Set DASD Type for Format       B-20         B.10.11       Set Media Type for Format       B-22         B.11       Fixed Disk I/O (INT 13H, Part 2)       B-21         B.11.1       Disk Reset       B-23         B.11.2       Read Status       B-23         B.11.3       Read Disk       B-23         B.11.4       Write Disk       B-23         B.11.5       Verify Disk Sectors       B-24         B.11.5       Verify Disk Sectors       B-24         B.11.5       Verify Disk Sectors       B-24         B.11.5       Verify Disk Parameters       B-25         B.11.4       Write Disk       B-26         B.11.5       Verify Disk Parameters       B-25         B.11.6       Format Disk Track       B-26         B.11.7       Disk Read Long       B-26         B.11.10       Disk Write Long<	B.10.2	Read Status	B-15
B.10.5       Disk Verify	B.10.3	Disk Read	B-16
B.10.6       Format Disk Track       B-17         B.10.7       Disk Drive Parameters.       B-18         B.10.8       Read DASD Type       B-18         B.10.9       Disk Change Line Status.       B-19         B.10.10       Set DASD Type for Format       B-19         B.10.11       Set Media Type for Format       B-20         B.11       Fixed Disk I/O (INT 13H, Part 2)       B-21         B.11.1       Disk Reset       B-22         B.11.2       Read Status.       B-23         B.11.3       Read Disk       B-23         B.11.4       Write Disk       B-23         B.11.5       Verify Disk Sectors       B-24         B.11.5       Verify Disk Sectors       B-24         B.11.7       Disk Disk Parameters       B-23         B.11.8       Initialize Disk Parameters       B-25         B.11.9       Disk Read Long       B-25         B.11.10       Disk Write Long       B-26         B.11.1       Disk Alternate Reset       B-27         B.11.1       Disk Ready Test       B-27         B.11.13       Disk Recalibrate       B-27         B.11.14       Disk Diagnostics       B-28	B.10.4	Disk Write	B-16
B.10.7       Disk Drive Parameters.       B-18         B.10.8       Read DASD Type.       B-18         B.10.9       Disk Change Line Status.       B-19         B.10.10       Set DASD Type for Format       B-19         B.10.11       Set Media Type for Format       B-20         B.11       Fixed Disk I/O (INT 13H, Part 2).       B-21         B.11.1       Disk Reset       B-22         B.11.2       Read Status.       B-23         B.11.3       Read Disk.       B-23         B.11.4       Write Disk       B-23         B.11.5       Verify Disk Sectors       B-24         B.11.6       Format Disk Track.       B-23         B.11.7       Disk Disk Parameters.       B-25         B.11.8       Initialize Disk Parameters.       B-25         B.11.9       Disk Read Long       B-26         B.11.10       Disk Write Long.       B-26         B.11.11       Disk Alternate Reset       B-27         B.11.12       Disk Alternate Reset       B-27         B.11.13       Disk ReadJ Long       B-26         B.11.1       Disk Read Long       B-26         B.11.11       Disk Ready Test       B-27         B.11.13 </td <td>B.10.5</td> <td>Disk Verify</td> <td>B-17</td>	B.10.5	Disk Verify	B-17
B.10.7       Disk Drive Parameters.       B-18         B.10.8       Read DASD Type.       B-18         B.10.9       Disk Change Line Status.       B-19         B.10.10       Set DASD Type for Format       B-19         B.10.11       Set Media Type for Format       B-20         B.11       Fixed Disk I/O (INT 13H, Part 2).       B-21         B.11.1       Disk Reset       B-22         B.11.2       Read Status.       B-23         B.11.3       Read Disk.       B-23         B.11.4       Write Disk       B-23         B.11.5       Verify Disk Sectors       B-24         B.11.6       Format Disk Track.       B-23         B.11.7       Disk Disk Parameters.       B-25         B.11.8       Initialize Disk Parameters.       B-25         B.11.9       Disk Read Long       B-26         B.11.10       Disk Write Long.       B-26         B.11.11       Disk Alternate Reset       B-27         B.11.12       Disk Alternate Reset       B-27         B.11.13       Disk ReadJ Long       B-26         B.11.1       Disk Read Long       B-26         B.11.11       Disk Ready Test       B-27         B.11.13 </td <td>B.10.6</td> <td>Format Disk Track</td> <td>B-17</td>	B.10.6	Format Disk Track	B-17
B.10.8       Read DASD Type       B-18         B.10.9       Disk Change Line Status       B-19         B.10.10       Set DASD Type for Format       B-19         B.10.11       Set Media Type for Format       B-20         B.11       Fixed Disk I/O (INT 13H, Part 2)       B-21         B.11.1       Disk Reset       B-22         B.11.2       Read Status       B-23         B.11.3       Read Disk       B-23         B.11.4       Write Disk       B-23         B.11.5       Verify Disk Sectors       B-24         B.11.6       Format Disk Track       B-23         B.11.7       Disk Disk Sectors       B-24         B.11.6       Format Disk Track       B-24         B.11.7       Disk Disk Parameters       B-25         B.11.8       Initialize Disk Parameters       B-25         B.11.9       Disk Read Long       B-26         B.11.10       Disk Write Long       B-26         B.11.11       Disk Alternate Reset       B-27         B.11.12       Disk Alternate Reset       B-27         B.11.13       Disk Recalibrate       B-27         B.11.14       Disk Recalibrate       B-27         B.11.15	B.10.7		B-18
B.10.9       Disk Change Line Status.       B-19         B.10.10       Set DASD Type for Format       B-19         B.10.11       Set Media Type for Format       B-20         B.11       Fixed Disk I/O (INT 13H, Part 2).       B-21         B.11.1       Disk Reset       B-22         B.11.2       Read Status.       B-23         B.11.3       Read Disk.       B-23         B.11.4       Write Disk       B-23         B.11.5       Verify Disk Sectors       B-24         B.11.6       Format Disk Track.       B-23         B.11.7       Disk Parameters.       B-24         B.11.7       Disk Parameters.       B-24         B.11.7       Disk Parameters.       B-24         B.11.7       Disk Read Long       B-25         B.11.9       Disk Write Long.       B-26         B.11.10       Disk Write Long.       B-26         B.11.12       Disk Alternate Reset.       B-27         B.11.13       Disk Ready Test.       B-27         B.11.14       Disk Recalibrate       B-27         B.11.15       Disk Diagnostics       B-27	B.10.8		B-18
B.10.10       Set DASD Type for Format       B-19         B.10.11       Set Media Type for Format       B-20         B.11       Fixed Disk I/O (INT 13H, Part 2)       B-21         B.11.1       Disk Reset       B-22         B.11.2       Read Status       B-23         B.11.3       Read Disk       B-23         B.11.4       Write Disk       B-23         B.11.5       Verify Disk Sectors       B-24         B.11.6       Format Disk Track       B-24         B.11.7       Disk Disk Parameters       B-24         B.11.8       Initialize Disk Parameters       B-25         B.11.9       Disk Read Long       B-25         B.11.10       Disk Write Long       B-26         B.11.11       Disk Read Long       B-26         B.11.12       Disk Alternate Reset       B-26         B.11.10       Disk Kead       B-26         B.11.11       Disk Ready Test       B-27         B.11.12       Disk Recalibrate       B-27         B.11.14       Disk Diagnostics       B-27         B.11.15       Disk Diagnostics       B-28	B.10.9	Disk Change Line Status	B-19
B.10.11       Set Media Type for Format       B-20         B.11       Fixed Disk I/O (INT 13H, Part 2)       B-21         B.11.1       Disk Reset       B-22         B.11.2       Read Status       B-23         B.11.3       Read Disk       B-23         B.11.4       Write Disk       B-23         B.11.5       Verify Disk Sectors       B-24         B.11.6       Format Disk Track       B-24         B.11.7       Disk Disk Parameters       B-24         B.11.8       Initialize Disk Parameters       B-25         B.11.9       Disk Read Long       B-26         B.11.10       Disk Write Long       B-26         B.11.11       Disk Read Long       B-26         B.11.12       Disk Alternate Reset       B-26         B.11.12       Disk Alternate Reset       B-26         B.11.12       Disk Alternate Reset       B-27         B.11.13       Disk Ready Test       B-27         B.11.14       Disk Diagnostics       B-27         B.11.15       Disk Diagnostics       B-28	B.10.10	Set DASD Type for Format	B-19
B.11       Fixed Disk I/O (INT 13H, Part 2)	B.10.11	Set Media Type for Format	B-20
B.11.2Read Status.B-23B.11.3Read Disk.B-23B.11.4Write DiskB-23B.11.5Verify Disk SectorsB-24B.11.6Format Disk Track.B-24B.11.7Disk Drive Parameters.B-25B.11.8Initialize Disk ParametersB-25B.11.9Disk Read LongB-26B.11.10Disk Write Long.B-26B.11.11Disk SeekB-26B.11.12Disk Alternate Reset.B-27B.11.13Disk Ready TestB-27B.11.14Disk RecalibrateB-27B.11.15Disk DiagnosticsB-28	B.11		B-21
B.11.3Read Disk.B-23B.11.4Write DiskB-23B.11.5Verify Disk SectorsB-24B.11.6Format Disk Track.B-24B.11.7Disk Drive ParametersB-25B.11.8Initialize Disk ParametersB-25B.11.9Disk Read LongB-26B.11.10Disk Write LongB-26B.11.11Disk SeekB-26B.11.12Disk Alternate ResetB-27B.11.13Disk Ready TestB-27B.11.14Disk RecalibrateB-27B.11.15Disk DiagnosticsB-28	B.11.1	Disk Reset	B-22
B.11.4Write DiskB-23B.11.5Verify Disk SectorsB-24B.11.6Format Disk TrackB-24B.11.7Disk Drive ParametersB-25B.11.8Initialize Disk ParametersB-25B.11.9Disk Read LongB-26B.11.10Disk Write LongB-26B.11.11Disk SeekB-26B.11.12Disk Alternate ResetB-27B.11.13Disk Ready TestB-27B.11.14Disk RecalibrateB-27B.11.15Disk DiagnosticsB-28	B.11.2	Read Status	B-23
B.11.5Verify Disk SectorsB-24B.11.6Format Disk TrackB-24B.11.7Disk Drive ParametersB-25B.11.8Initialize Disk ParametersB-25B.11.9Disk Read LongB-26B.11.10Disk Write LongB-26B.11.11Disk SeekB-26B.11.12Disk Alternate ResetB-27B.11.13Disk Ready TestB-27B.11.14Disk RecalibrateB-27B.11.15Disk DiagnosticsB-28	B.11.3	Read Disk	B-23
B.11.6Format Disk TrackB-24B.11.7Disk Drive ParametersB-25B.11.8Initialize Disk ParametersB-25B.11.9Disk Read LongB-25B.11.10Disk Write LongB-26B.11.11Disk SeekB-26B.11.12Disk Alternate ResetB-27B.11.13Disk Ready TestB-27B.11.14Disk RecalibrateB-27B.11.15Disk DiagnosticsB-28	B.11.4	Write Disk	B-23
B.11.7Disk Drive Parameters.B-25B.11.8Initialize Disk ParametersB-25B.11.9Disk Read LongB-25B.11.10Disk Write LongB-26B.11.11Disk SeekB-26B.11.12Disk Alternate ResetB-27B.11.13Disk Ready TestB-27B.11.14Disk RecalibrateB-27B.11.15Disk DiagnosticsB-28	B.11.5	Verify Disk Sectors	B-24
B.11.8Initialize Disk ParametersB-25B.11.9Disk Read LongB-25B.11.10Disk Write LongB-26B.11.11Disk SeekB-26B.11.12Disk Alternate ResetB-27B.11.13Disk Ready TestB-27B.11.14Disk RecalibrateB-27B.11.15Disk DiagnosticsB-28	B.11.6	Format Disk Track	B-24
B.11.9       Disk Read Long       B-25         B.11.10       Disk Write Long       B-26         B.11.11       Disk Seek       B-26         B.11.12       Disk Alternate Reset       B-27         B.11.13       Disk Ready Test       B-27         B.11.14       Disk Recalibrate       B-27         B.11.15       Disk Diagnostics       B-28	B.11.7	Disk Drive Parameters	B-25
B.11.10         Disk Write Long.         B-26           B.11.11         Disk Seek         B-26           B.11.12         Disk Alternate Reset.         B-27           B.11.13         Disk Ready Test         B-27           B.11.14         Disk Recalibrate         B-27           B.11.15         Disk Diagnostics         B-28	B.11.8	Initialize Disk Parameters	B-25
B.11.11Disk SeekB-26B.11.12Disk Alternate ResetB-27B.11.13Disk Ready TestB-27B.11.14Disk RecalibrateB-27B.11.15Disk DiagnosticsB-28	B.11.9	Disk Read Long	B-25
B.11.12Disk Alternate Reset.B-27B.11.13Disk Ready TestB-27B.11.14Disk RecalibrateB-27B.11.15Disk DiagnosticsB-28	B.11.10	Disk Write Long	B-26
B.11.13Disk Ready TestB-27B.11.14Disk RecalibrateB-27B.11.15Disk DiagnosticsB-28	B.11.11	Disk Seek	B-26
B.11.14Disk RecalibrateB-27B.11.15Disk DiagnosticsB-28	B.11.12	Disk Alternate Reset	B-27
B.11.14Disk RecalibrateB-27B.11.15Disk DiagnosticsB-28	B.11.13	Disk Ready Test	B-27
B.11.15 Disk Diagnostics B-28	B.11.14		B-27
B.11.16 Read DASD Type B-28	B.11.15	Disk Diagnostics	B-28
	B.11.16	Read DASD Type	B-28

# B System BIOS Specifications (continued)

B.12	RS-232 I/O (INT 14H)	B-29
B.12.1	Initialize the Communication Port	B-30
B.12.2	Send a Character	B-31
B.12.3	Receive a Character	B-32
B.12.4	Return the Communication Port Status	B-32
B.13	System Service Routines (INT 15H)	B-33
B.13.1	Keyboard Intercept	B-34
B.13.2	Device Open	B-35
B.13.3	Device Close	B-35
B.13.4	Program Termination	B-35
B.13.5	Event Wait	B-36
B.13.6	Joystick Support	B-36
B.13.7	System Request Key Pressed	B-37
B.13.8	Wait	B-37
B.13.9	Move Block	B-38
B.13.10	Extended Memory Size Determination	B-38
B.13.11	Switch CPU to Protected Mode	B-39
B.13.12	Device Busy	B-39
B.13.13	Interrupt Complete	B-40
B.13.14	Return System Configuration Parameters	B-40
B.14	Keyboard I/O (INT 16H)	B-42
B.14.1	Read Next Character	B-43
B.14.2	Read Buffer Status	B-43
B.14.3	Return Shift Status	B-44
B.14.4	Set Typematic Rate and Delay	B-45
B.14.5	Place ASCII Character/Scan Code in Keyboard Buffer	B-46
B.14.6	Extended Read Interface for the Enhanced Keyboard	B-46
B.14.7	Extended Buffer Status for the Enhanced Keyboard	B-46
B.14.8	Return the Extended Shift Status for the Enhanced Keyboard	B-47
B.15	Printer I/O (INT 17H)	B-48
B.15.1	Print Character	B-48
B.15.2	Initialize Printer Port	B-49
B.15.3	Read Printer Status	B-49
B.16	System Boot (INT 19H)	B-50

# **B** System BIOS Specifications (continued)

B.17	Clock Services (INT 1AH)	B-50
B.17.1	Read the System Timer Count	B-51
B.17.2	Set the System Timer Count	B-51
B.17.3	Read the Real-time Clock Time	B-51
B.17.4	Set the Real-time Clock Time	B-52
B.17.5	Read the Real-time Clock Date	B-52
B.17.6	Set the Real-time Clock Date	B-53
B.17.7	Set the Real-time Clock Alarm	B-53
B.17.8	Reset the Real-time Clock Alarm	B-53
B.18	Real-Time Clock (INT 70H)	B-54
B.19	Coprocessor Interrupt (INT 75H)	B-54
B.20	Fixed Disk H/W Interrupt (INT 76H)	B-54

### C Jumper Settings

Introduction	C-1
Total Onboard DRAM	C-3
Onboard ROM Size	C-3
Onboard RAM	C-4
Video Display Type	C-5
Printer Acknowledge	
Parallel Printer Port Selection	C-6
Serial Communications Port Selection	C-6
	Total Onboard DRAM Onboard ROM Size Onboard RAM Video Display Type Printer Acknowledge Parallel Printer Port Selection

### D Changing CPU Speed

D.1	Introduction	D-1
D.2	Overview	D-1
D.3	Keyboard Method	D-2
D.4	Setup Method	D-2
D.5	Software Method	D-3

### E Messages

E.1	Introduction	E-1
E.2	POST and Boot Messages	E-1
E.2.1	POST and Boot Error Messages	E-2
E.2.2	POST and Boot Information Messages	E-9
E.3	Run-Time Messages	E-11
E.4	302 Board Errors	

### F Device Mapping

F.1 Introduction	F-1
F.2 System Memory Map	F-2
F.3 I/O Addresses	F-3
F.4 Interrupt Priority Levels	
F.5 DMA Channel Assignments	F-8
F.6 RtC Mapping	F-8

### G Hot Keys

### H Pin Assignments for Major Signals

Introduction	H-1
CPU Pin Assignments	H-1
	H-3
ISA Bus Pin Assignments	H-4
Serial Communications Port Pinouts	H-6
Parallel Printer Port Pinout	H-8
Keyboard Pinout	H-9
	CPU Pin Assignments AT32 Bus Pin Assignments ISA Bus Pin Assignments Serial Communications Port Pinouts Parallel Printer Port Pinout

### I Installation

I-1
I-1
I-3
I-4
I-6

# Glossary

### Index

# int<sub>e</sub>l° \_\_\_\_\_

# Figures

### 1 Board Overview

1-1	302 Board Component Layout	1-3
1-2	302 Board Functional Block Diagram (sheet 1 of 2)	1-4
1-2	302 Board Functional Block Diagram (sheet 2 of 2)	1-5

### 2 Central Processing Core

2-1	Central Processing Core	2-2
2-2	CPU Block Diagram (sheet 1 of 2)	2-8
2-2	CPU Block Diagram (sheet 2 of 2)	2-9
2-3	Cache and Tag Memory	2-14

### 6 8254 Programmable Interval Timer

6-1	Internal Block Diagram of a Counter	6-3
		•••

### 7 8259 Programmable Interrupt Controllers

7-3
7-9
7-10
7-11
7-13
7-14
7-16
7-17

8	Direct Memory Access (DMA)	
8-1 8-2	DMA Controller Block Diagram DMA Logic	8-2 8-3
9	1287 Real-time Clock (RTC)	
9-1	RTC Memory Map	9-2
11	Keyboard Controller	
11-1	Keyboard Controller	11-2
13	Power-on Self Test and Setup	
13-1 13-2	Typical Setup Screen 1 Typical Setup Screen 2	13-4 13-10
Α	Specifications	
A-1	302 Board Dimensions	A-2
С	Jumper Settings	
C-1	302 Board Jumper Locations	C-2
D	Changing CPU Speed	
D-1 D-2	Setting Deturbo Mode - Software Method Setting Turbo Mode - Software Method	D-4 D-5
I	Installation	
-1  -2  -3	Installing SIMMs Removing SIMMs Installing a Numeric Coprocessor	-2  -4  -5

# int<sub>e</sub>l° \_\_\_\_\_

# Tables

### 3 Onboard Memory

3-1	Memory Address Map	3-2
3-2	Memory Resource Hierarchy	3-4
3-3	Memory Installed	3-5
3-4	Address Range	3-5

### 5 Intel ISA Bus

5-1	Number of Agents Supported	5-2
	ISA Bus Cycles	5-3

### 6 8254 Programmable Interval Timer

6-1	Counter Functions, Gates, and Signals	6-2
6-2	Counter/Timer Address Map	6-5
6-3	Control Register Bit Definition	6-6
6-4	Read-back Command Format	6-8
6-5	Format of a Latched Status Byte	6-9

### 7 8259 Programmable Interrupt Controllers

7-1	Interrupt Levels	7-6
7-2	Interrupt Controller I/O Address and I/O Data	7-8

# 8 Direct Memory Access (DMA)

8-1	DMA Channel Assignment	8-7
8-2	DMA Internal Registers	8-9
8-3	I/O Port Addresses for DMA Address and Count Registers	8-10
8-4	Control Register I/O Port Addresses	8-12
8-5	Command Register Bit Assignments	8-13
8-6	Mode Register Bit Assignments	8-14
8-7	Request Register Update	8-15
8-8	Write Single Mask Bit Assignments	8-16
8-9	Write All Mask Bit Assignments	8-17
8-10	Status Register Bit Assignments	8-18
8-11	Lower-page Register Addresses for Each Channel	8-20
8-12	Upper-page Register Addresses for Each Channel	8-21

# 9 1287 Real-time Clock (RTC)

9-1	Real-time Clock Address Map	9-4
9-2	Time, Calendar, and Alarm Data Format	9-6
9-3	Status Register A (0AH)	9-7
9-4	Status Register B (0BH)	9-8
9-5	Status Register C (0CH)	9-10
9-6	Status Register D (0DH)	9-11
9-7	Diagnostic Status Byte (0EH)	9-12
9-8	Shutdown Status Byte (0FH)	9-13
9-9	Floppy Disk Drive Type Byte (10H)	9-14
9-10	Fixed Disk Type Byte (12H)	9-15
9-11	Equipment Byte (14H)	9-16
9-12	Low and High Base Memory Byte (15H and 16H)	9-17
9-13	Low and High Memory Expansion Bytes (17H and 18H)	9-17
9-14	Feature Installed Byte (1FH)	9-18
9-15	Fixed Disk Type 48 Parameters (20H:27H)	9-19
9-16	Shadow and Setup Byte (28H)	9-20
9-17	Low and High Extended Memory Bytes (30H and 31H)	9-21
9-18	Setup Information Byte (33H)	9-22
9-19	CPU Speed Byte (34H)	9-22
9-20	Fixed Disk Type 49 Parameters (35H:3CH)	9-23

### 10 Communication Ports

10-1	Selection of Addresses and Interrupt Levels	10-1
10-2	Port Address and Interrupt Levels	10-3
10-3	Input Instructions	10-3
10-4	Output Instructions	10-4
10-5	Parallel Port Registers (Bits 7-4)	10-4
10-6	Parallel Port Registers (Bits 3-0)	10-5

### 11 Keyboard Controller

Status Register Bit Assignments	11-3
Input Port Bit Assignments	11-5
Output Port Bit Assignments	11-6
Controller Commands	11-6
Data Stream Bits	11-8
	Input Port Bit Assignments Output Port Bit Assignments Controller Commands

### 12 302 Board Special Interfaces

12-1	J23 Keylock Pinout	12-1
12-2	J23 Speaker Header Pinout	12-2
12-3	J23 Reset Interface Pinouts	12-3

### A Specifications

A-1	302 Board Specifications	A-1
A-2	Physical Characteristics	A-3
A-3	Power Consumption	A-3
A-4	Maximum Current Ratings	A-4
A-5	Maximum +5V Current Drain on 302 Board	A-5

### **B** System BIOS Specifications

B-1	Video I/O	B-4
B-2	Floppy Disk Drive I/O (part 1)	B-14
B-3	Fixed Disk I/O (part 2)	B-21
B-4	RS-232 I/O	B-29
B-5	System Service Routines	B-33
B-6	System Descriptor Table	B-41
B-7	Gate A20 Control Routine	B-41
B-8	Keyboard I/O	B-42
B-9	Printer I/O	B-48
B-10	Clock Services	B-50

### C Jumper Settings

Total Onboard RAM	C-3
Onboard ROM Size	C-3
	C-4
Onboard RAM Speed	C-4
Video Display Type	C-5
Parallel Printer Port Selection	
Serial Communications Port Selection	C-6
	Onboard ROM Size Onboard RAM Type Onboard RAM Speed Video Display Type Printer Acknowledge Parallel Printer Port Selection

### E Messages

E-1	Beep Codes for Fatal Errors	E-13
E-2	Beep Codes for Non-fatal Errors	E-14

# F Device Mapping

F-1	Memory Address Map	F-2
F-2	I/O Address Map	F-3
F-3	I/O Address 61H Bit Assignment	F-4
F-4	I/O Address 78H Bit Assignments	F-5
F-5	I/O Address 79H Bit Assignments	F-6
F-6	Interrupt Levels	F-7
F-7	DMA Channel Assignment	F-8
F-8	RTC Address Map	F-9

### H Pin Assignments for Major Signals

1-3 1-4
1-4
1-5
1-6
1-6
1-7
1-8
1-9

# **About This Manual**

### PURPOSE

This manual provides reference data for the Intel386<sup>™</sup> MicroComputer Model 302 Board. This gives system designers sufficient information to allow them to integrate the board into systems, and to test and evaluate that integration. System designers may also use this manual on a continuing basis to support their customers, solve problems, or expand the system. For example, this manual may be used to:

- Design or select system components such as expansion boards, peripheral devices, and replacement parts
- Select or design systems and applications software
- Solve system integration and interfacing problems
- Troubleshoot at an advanced level
- Program complex applications and systems software such as device drivers, interrupt handlers, etc.

#### LIBRARY PLAN

This manual is part of a set of three manuals written for the Intel386 MicroComputer Model 302 Board. A brief description of these manuals is as follows:

- Intel386<sup>™</sup> MicroComputer Model 302 System Technical Reference Manual. This manual and its companion volume, Intel386<sup>™</sup> MicroComputer Model 302 Board Technical Reference Manual, contain detailed technical information. The system manual focuses on the major elements contained in the system module chassis. It provides a general description of the system, a brief overview of the 302 board, all internal interfaces to other components, and all external interfaces. Basic installation and removal procedures for system components and peripheral devices are also included. A detailed description of the 302 board is contained in a separate manual (see following).
- Intel386<sup>™</sup> MicroComputer Model 302 Board Technical Reference Manual. This manual describes the 302 board in detail, and is written for engineers who design system accessories and for programmers who require information on hardware and firmware specifications.
- Intel386<sup>™</sup> MicroComputer Model 302 System User's Guide. This manual is written for an end-user. It describes all system features, installation and operation of the system, how to install or remove system components, and basic troubleshooting procedures should problems occur.

### AUDIENCE

This manual is written for an Original Equipment Manufacturer (OEM), or a system engineer or hardware or software designer. As such, it assumes you are familiar with the general terminology used in the field of microprocessor and microcomputer design.

### ORGANIZATION

This manual is organized as follows:

Chapter 1	Board Overview — provides an overview of the 302 board. Included is a list of features, a block diagram of the board and a description of the feature set.
Chapter 2	Central Processing Core — describes the operation of the CPU, the 387 numeric coprocessor, cache memory, cache tag memory, and data and controller buffers.
Chapter 3	Onboard Memory — describes the onboard dynamic random access memory (DRAM), single in-line memory modules (SIMMs), and 32-bit expansion board DRAM.
Chapter 4	Intel AT32 Bus Interface — provides a brief description of the AT32 Bus Interface.
Chapter 5	Intel ISA Bus — introduces the ISA bus, provides general attributes of the ISA bus, and describes the ISA bus signal groups.
Chapter 6	8254 Programmable Interval Timer (PIT) — describes the operation of the PIT.
Chapter 7	8259 Programmable Interrupt Controllers (PICs) — describes the operation of the PICs.
Chapter 8	Direct Memory Access (DMA) — describes the operation of the dual 8237 DMA controllers.
Chapter 9	1287 Real-time Clock (RTC) — describes the operation of the RTC.
Chapter 10	Communications Ports — describes the system serial and parallel communications ports.
Chapter 11	Keyboard Controller — describes the operation of the keyboard controller.

Chapter 12	302 Board Special Interfaces — describes three special board interfaces: keylock, speaker, and the reset.
Chapter 13	Power-on Self Test and Setup — describes the power- on self test and the setup utility stored in ROM.
Appendix A	Specifications — provides system specifications for the 302 board.
Appendix B	System BIOS Specifications — provides BIOS specifications for the 302 board.
Appendix C	Jumper Settings — provides jumper settings for the 302 board.
Appendix D	Changing CPU Speed — describes how to effectively reduce the processor clock speed to 8 MHz.
Appendix E	Messages — describes the various screen messages and error beep codes. Included are POST messages, run-time messages, board error messages, and beep codes.
Appendix F	Device Mapping — provides tables that list mapping and addressing information related to system memory and onboard devices.
Appendix G	Hot Keys — lists keystroke sequences used to invoke special system functions.
Appendix H	Pin Assignments for Major Signals — provides pin assignments for all major signals present in the 302 system.
Appendix I	Component Installation — describes how to install the Intel 387™ numeric coprocessor and SIMMs.

Glossary	Glossary — defines the standard acronyms and technical terms used in the field of microcomputer design.
Index	Index — provides important terms arranged in alphabetical order for quick reference.

#### HOW TO OBTAIN MORE INFORMATION

You may be interested in obtaining further information about products and services relating to the Intel386 MicroComputer Model 302 Board. Or you may require more detailed information than is provided in this manual.

Please contact your local Intel Sales Office if you desire additional information.

### NOTATIONAL CONVENTIONS

Certain notational conventions are used throughout this manual and others in the library. Refer to the glossary for specific definitions. Notational conventions include:

- system Throughout this manual, the term "system" applies to the Intel386™ MicroComputer Model 302 System.
- board Throughout this manual, the term "302 board" or "board" applies to the Intel386™ MicroComputer Model 302 Board.
- A letter, number, symbol, or word enclosed in a double rectangle, and printed in small type represents a a key on your keyboard. For example, the instruction "press F1" means press the key labeled "F1" on your keyboard.
- Backspace
   This manual refers to most keys by the symbol, letter, or name printed on the key. The exception is the Backspace key. The Backspace key is called Backspace to distinguish it from the left arrow key.

Enter	This manual uses Enter to refer to the two Enter keys. Other manuals refer to the Enter keys as RETURN, CARRIAGE RETURN, or use an arrow. All these items are interchangeable.
× + v	Two or three key names with plus signs between them indicate multiple-key entries. For example, $\boxed{Ctrl}$ + $\boxed{Att}$ + $\boxed{Del}$ means hold down the $\boxed{Ctrl}$ and $\boxed{Att}$ keys and press the $\boxed{Del}$ key.
*	In signal definitions, the asterisk (*) following a signal name indicates an active low signal; for example IOCHCK*.
Н	An H suffix to a numerical value denotes hexadecimal numbers. For example, 0F8H means 0F8 (hexadecimal). See hex.
hex	Denotes hexadecimal numbers. Memory addresses are always listed in hexadecimal notation and are indicated by the term "hex" preceding or following the number; i.e., 0A hex or hex 8A. See H.
к	A K (upper case) suffix to a numerical value is used to indicate size in kilobytes; i.e., 7168K, 640K, etc. Note, that while a kilobyte is defined as 1024 bytes, the lower case k prefix used in other measurements indicates a quantity of 1,000. The K suffix is synonymous with KB or Kbyte. See Glossary.
Kb	A Kb suffix to a numerical value indicates size in kilobits. For example: 512Kb. (One kilobit is defined as 1024 bits.)
Μ	An M suffix to a numerical value is used to indicate size in megabytes; i.e., 1M, 256M, etc. Note, however, that while a megabyte is defined as 1,048,576 bytes the M prefix used in other measurements indicates a quantity of 1,000,000. The M suffix is synonymous with MB or megabyte. See Glossary.
Mb	An Mb suffix to a numerical value indicates size in megabits. For example: 4Mb. (One megabit is defined as 1,048,576 bits.)

All system messages (screen display) are shown in a non-proportional font to simulate the appearance of a screen display.

An italicized word or phrase is used to represent a variable, a publication title, or occasionally, to lend emphasis in textual descriptions. Where shown, DOS, UNIX or XENIX files, path names and directories are also italicized.

The longer POST and Boot error and informational messages in the index are followed by an ellipsis (three periods). This convention is used to denote that the message in the index is incomplete. The portion appearing in the index is of sufficient length to make a unique identification.

Four kinds of special notices are used throughout the text to emphasize specific information. Examples of each type of notice are as follows:

#### => Note

Notes are used to provide the reader with important or explanatory information that stands out from the rest of the text.



#### DANGER

DANGER indicates the presence of a hazard that *will* cause death or severe personal injury if the hazard is not avoided.



#### WARNING

WARNING indicates the presence of a hazard that *can* cause death or severe personal injury if the hazard is not avoided.



#### CAUTION

CAUTION indicates the presence of a hazard that *can or will* cause minor personal injury or damage to hardware or software.

100

### **RELATED PUBLICATIONS**

Refer to the following publications for additional information relating to the Intel386 MicroComputer Model 302 Board and its operating environment.

- Intel386<sup>™</sup> MicroComputer Model 302 System Technical Reference Manual (Intel order number 505066-001)
- Intel386™ MicroComputer Model 302 User's Guide (Intel order number 505068-001)
- Introduction to the 80386 (Intel order number 231252-001)
- 80386 Programmer's Reference Manual (Intel order number 230985-001)
- 80387 Programmer's Reference Manual (Intel order number 231917-001)
- 386<sup>™</sup> Microprocessor Hardware Reference Manual (Intel order number 231732-003)
- 80386 System Software Writer's Guide (Intel order number 231499-001)
- Microprocessor and Peripheral Handbook (Volume I and II) (Intel order number 230843-006)

# **Board Overview**



### 1.1 INTRODUCTION

This chapter provides an overview of the 302 board. Included in this chapter is a list of features, a block diagram of the board, and a description of the feature set.

#### 1.2 OVERVIEW

The 302 board contains the following components:

- 25 MHz 386 central processing unit (CPU)
- 64K cache memory and cache tag memory
- ASIC device for CPU control logic (CAT)
- 1, 2, 4, or 8M of onboard memory
- 64K read-only memory (ROM)
- AT32 bus interface
- ASIC device for bus interface and memory control logic (DBC)
- Two direct memory access (DMA) controllers
- Two DMA page registers for accesses to memory throughout the full AT32 memory range.
- Two programmable interrupt controllers (PICs)
- Programmable interval timer (PIT)
- Real-time CMOS clock/calendar with integral lithium battery
- ASIC device for I/O decode logic (RIO)
- A 121-pin extended numeric coprocessor socket
- Eight I/O expansion slots (two 32-bit, five 16-bit, one 8-bit)
- I/O ports (two serial and one parallel)
- ROM-based setup program, BIOS, and power-on self test
- Keyboard controller and ports
- Reset interface
- Speaker interface
- Keylock interface



Figure 1-1 illustrates the component layout of the 302 board. Figure 1-2 shows a functional block diagram of the 302 board.

Figure 1-1. 302 Board Component Layout



Figure 1-2. 302 Board Functional Block Diagram (sheet 1 of 2)



Figure 1-2. 302 Board Functional Block Diagram (sheet 2 of 2)

### **1.3 FEATURE SET DESCRIPTION**

This section gives detailed description of the features listed earlier.

### 1.3.1 Central Processing Unit (CPU)

The CPU incorporates multitasking support, memory management, address translation caches, and a high-speed 32-bit bus interface. The CPU runs at a clock speed of 25 MHz resulting in a system speed of 40 ns per cycle. For applications requiring slower operation (such as installing some copy-protected software), a deturbo mode is provided. The deturbo mode reduces the effective system operating speed to 8 MHz by inserting wait states into the CPU cycle.

### 1.3.2 Memory

The 302 board contains three types of memory: read-only memory, cache and tag memory, and DRAM.

- The 302 board contains 64K of ROM. The ROM contains the BIOS, power-on self test (POST), and setup program.
- The 64K direct-mapped cache memory consists of eight static random access memory (SRAM) chips. The cache provides zero wait-state read performance and one wait-state write performance during CPU accesses. The tag memory consists of three SRAM chips and supplies 12-bit tag data for address comparison.
- The 302 board contains 4M (expandable to 8M) of DRAM.

### 1.3.3 AT32 Bus

The AT32 bus supports 28-bit physical addresses and has a physical memory range of up to 256M. The AT32 bus is a high performance 32-bit extension to the Intel ISA bus. The AT32 bus provides a standard interface supporting additional memory, and I/O. The 302 board contains two AT32 slots, each capable of accepting 16M of DRAM.

### 1.3.4 Intel ISA Bus

The system is compatible with the Intel ISA bus. I/O expansion boards communicate with the system via the ISA bus.

### 1.3.5 Programmable Interval Timer

Three general-purpose programmable interval timers (PITs), in an 82C54 integrated circuit, generate timing for memory refresh, software timing control, and speaker frequency generation.

### 1.3.6 Programmable Interrupt Controller

Two programmable interrupt controllers (PICs) provide 15 interrupt levels minimizing the software and real-time overhead in handling multilevel interrupts.

### 1.3.7 DMA Controller

Two 8237 direct memory access (DMA) controllers provide seven DMA channels for data transfer between main memory and I/O devices. Each DMA controller generates the memory addresses and controls signals needed to transfer data.

### 1.3.8 Real-time CMOS Clock

The Real-time Clock (RTC) provides 50 bytes of CMOS RAM and a battery backup power source for keeping the system clock/calendar and system configuration parameters in nonvolatile memory. This protects the contents of both the RAM and the clock during system power-up and power-down.

### 1.3.9 Input/Output Expansion Slots

The system has eight I/O expansion slots:

- One slot (J9) accepts 8-bit expansion boards only.
- Five slots (J7, J8, J10, J13, and J14) accept 8-bit or 16-bit expansion boards.
- Two slots (J11 and J12) accept 8-, 16-, or 32-bit expansion boards that are compatible with the AT32 bus.

### 1.3.10 Input/Output Ports

The 302 board provides a parallel printer port configured as either LPT1 or LPT2, and two serial communications ports configured as COM1 and COM2. Both serial ports can be disabled by changing the jumper settings.

### 1.3.11 Keyboard Interface

The keyboard connects to the 302 board through a bidirectional synchronous serial port. The bidirectional serial interface converts signals and sends the data to and from a 101- or 102-key keyboard.

### 1.3.12 Special Board Interfaces

The 302 board incorporates three special interfaces: keylock, speaker, and reset.

### 1.3.13 Firmware

The 302 board firmware consists of a POST that performs automatic system diagnostics, a setup program for setting system configuration parameters, and Phoenix Technologies' basic input/output system (BIOS).

The POST runs automatically and checks the CPU, keyboard, display, and system memory each time the system is turned on or rebooted.

The setup program is contained in the ROM BIOS on the 302 board and is used to store system configuration information. The information can be changed at any time by rerunning the setup program. The type of configuration information maintained by the setup program is as follows:

- Time and date
- Number and capacity of floppy disk drives
- Number and type of fixed disk drives
- Amount of base and extended memory
- Availability and type of primary display controller
- Keyboard present
- Coprocessor present
- CPU speed
- Shadow or do not shadow system BIOS and video BIOS
- Enable or disable cache memory, AT32 I/O, above 16M memory, speaker, and preboot SETUP

Onboard ROM consists of two 27256 EPROMS containing 64K of memory. The EPROMs contain the ROM code for the BIOS. Functions of the ROM BIOS are as follows:

- System initialization
- Power-on diagnostics
- System configuration
- Disk bootstrap loading
- Character bit patterns of the ASCII character set
- Storage of frequently needed input and output routines

If enabled in the setup program, the BIOS initializes the DRAM-shadowed BIOS option for increased system performance.

## **Central Processing Core**

# 2

### 2.1 INTRODUCTION

This chapter describes the central processing core of the 302 board. The 386 CPU, the 387 numeric coprocessor, cache memory, cache tag memory, and address and data buffers are discussed. For more detailed information on these components, refer to the *Intel Microprocessor and Peripheral Handbook*.

### 2.2 OVERVIEW

The central processing core contains the following components:

- A 386 32-bit CPU
- A 387 numeric coprocessor
- Cache memory
- Cache tag memory
- Address/data buffers
- An ASIC device for CPU and cache control (CAT)

Figure 2-1 diagrams the central processing core.





### 2.3 CPU

The CPU is a 386 microprocessor operating at 25 MHz. The CPU has separate 32-bit data and address paths, 32-bit registers, and on-chip memory management and protection. The CPU supports multiuser and multitasking systems, memory management, virtual memory, and task or memory isolation. Refer to "Related Publications" in About This Manual for a list of Intel reference manuals that provide detailed information on the 386 microprocessor.

### 2.3.1 Real Mode Architecture

The CPU defaults to real mode upon reset. Real mode is compatible with 8086/8088 and 80286 CPUs at the object code level and has the same capabilities and limitations. In real mode addressable physical memory is limited to 1M via segment registers, with a 64K limitation on segment size. Real mode does not provide memory protection features.

Real mode addresses are formed, as in the 8086, by combining the base address from a segment register with the offset value provided by the instruction. The CPU shifts the 16-bit base address value in the segment register left four bits, and adds the 16-bit offset value forming the 20-bit real address.

### 2.3.2 Protected Mode Architecture

In protected mode, the CPU increases the linear address space to 4 gigabytes and lets the user run programs of almost unlimited size (up to 64 terabytes). In this mode, the integrated memory management and protection mechanism translates virtual addresses to physical addresses. Protected mode also isolates the operating system and enforces the protection rules that are necessary for maintaining task integrity in a multitasking environment. This is useful in a multitasking and multiuser environment where resources are shared.

Protected mode provides memory paging, I/O protection, virtual-8086 mode, and a full 32-bit extended instruction set. Protected mode also provides source-code compatibility with the 8086/8088 and 80286 CPUs. This allows the direct execution of 16-bit applications at higher speeds.

### 2.3.3 Virtual-8086 Mode

The virtual-8086 mode is an extension of the protected mode. In this mode, the CPU provides compatibility with applications developed for the 8086/8088 while simultaneously providing a full 32-bit, large linear address programming environment in its protected mode.

Virtual memory allows programs to overcome the limitations of physical memory. The paging hardware allows the concurrent running of multiple virtual-8086 mode tasks and also provides protection and operating system isolation. The system divides virtual memory into many different segments which are mapped into physical memory during virtual memory execution. The memory management system transfers code and data between physical memory and disk memory.

### 2.3.4 CPU Signals

The following text defines the signal functions of the CPU. A signal name followed by an "I" in parentheses indicates an input signal, an "O" indicates an output signal and an "I/O" indicates an input/output signal. For more detailed information on the CPU signal functions, refer to the *Intel Microprocessor and Peripheral Handbook.* 

CLK2 (I)	The CLK2 signal is a 50-MHz system clock signal. It provides the basic timing for the system. The CPU divides CLK2 by two to achieve a 25-MHz working clock.
D(31:0) (I/O)	The D(31:0) signals are the data bus lines. These tri- state bidirectional signals input data during memory and I/O read cycles and output data during memory and I/O write cycles.
A(31:2) (O)	The A(31:2) signals are the address bus lines. These tri- state signals output physical memory and I/O addresses.

BE(3:0)* (O)	The BE(3:0)* signals are the byte enables. These signals indicate which bytes of the data lines will carry data for the current transfer.		
ADS* (O)	The ADS* signal is the address status. When ADS* is asserted, it indicates the beginning of a bus cycle. While ADS* is asserted, address lines A(31:2) are valid.		
M/IO* (O)	The M/IO (memory or I/O) signal indicates whether the access is to memory or an I/O device. When asserted (high), M/IO indicates that a memory or halt/shutdown cycle is in progress. When deasserted (low), M/IO indicates that a I/O or interrupt-acknowledge cycle is in progress.		
D/C* (O)	The D/C (data/control) signal is dual-purpose. When asserted (high), D/C indicates that a data cycle is in progress. When deasserted (low), D/C indicates that a control cycle is in progress.		
W/R* (O)	The W/R (write/read) signal is dual-purpose. When asserted (high), W/R indicates that a write cycle is in progress. When deasserted (low), W/R indicates that a read cycle is in progress.		
LOCK* (O)	The LOCK* signal, when asserted, indicates a locked bus. It prevents access by an external coprocessor until the CPU completes a read or modifying a byte in memory.		
READY* (I)	The READY* signal, when asserted, indicates the termination of a bus cycle and that the bus is available. Bus cycles are extended until terminated.		
HOLD (I)	The HOLD signal is the bus hold request. The signal requests ownership of the CPU local bus.		

HLDA (O)	The CPU asserts HLDA (hold acknowledge) as a response to HOLD. The CPU tri-states its buses. When HOLD is deasserted, the CPU deasserts HLDA.	
intr (I)	The INTR (interrupt request) signal, when asserted, requests that the CPU suspend program execution and service the interrupt request. The CPU samples the INTR line at the beginning of each processing cycle. The INTR signal must be asserted at least two processing cycles before the current instruction ends.	
NMI (I)	The NMI signal is the non-maskable interrupt. NMI is edge-triggered and cannot be masked by software. NMI has the highest priority of all interrupts.	
PEREQ (I)	The PEREQ signal is the coprocessor extension operand request and acknowledge signal. It coordinates data transfer between the CPU and the numeric coprocessor. When asserted, PEREQ requests the CPU to perform a data operand transfer to the numeric coprocessor.	
BUSY* (I)	The BUSY* signal is the coprocessor extension busy signal. It indicates the operating condition of the numeric coprocessor to the CPU. The CPU program execution stops as long as the signal remains asserted.	
ERROR* (I)	The ERROR* signal, when asserted, indicates the operational status of the numeric coprocessor to the CPU.	
RESET (I)	The RESET signal, when asserted, causes a system reset. It clears the internal logic of the CPU. The RESET signal initializes the CPU with a low-to-high transition.	

### 2.3.5 Basic CPU Bus Operations

The bus control unit manages all bus operations and generates the address, data, and command signals for external memory and I/O operations. The bus control unit also transfers instructions to the instruction pre-fetch unit. Instructions are stored in a 16-byte pre-fetch queue while waiting for decoding and execution. The execution unit does not need to wait for the completion of a bus cycle before accepting a new instruction. This results in faster execution of instructions.

The instruction pre-decode unit receives and decodes the instructions from the pre-fetch queue. It then places the instructions in the decoded instruction queue for use by the execution unit. Instructions can be placed three-deep in the decoded instruction queue.

The execution unit performs the basic processing functions. It accepts the decoded instructions from the instruction pre-decode unit and executes them. The execution unit uses the bus unit to fetch and store operands during the execution of instructions.

The address paging unit and the segmentation unit provide memory management and protection services for the CPU. They also translate logical addresses into physical addresses for use by the bus unit. A register cache in the address unit contains the information used for performing the various memory translation and protection checks for each bus cycle.







Figure 2-2. CPU Block Diagram (sheet 2 of 2)

The CPU uses a 50 MHz clock to control bus timing. The CPU divides this clock by two, which creates the 25 MHz internal processing clock and determines the bus cycle speed.

### 2.4 NUMERIC COPROCESSOR

A 121-pin extended numeric coprocessor (ENP) socket installed on the 302 board accommodates either an Intel 387 or Weitek 3167 numeric coprocessor. Both use the same clock generator as the CPU and fully support single-, double-, and extended-precision operations. The 387 numeric coprocessor is mapped on the I/O address space and the Weitek 3167 numeric coprocessor is mapped on memory address space.

A numerical coprocessor allows the CPU to perform high-speed mathematical calculations, logarithmic functions, and trigonometric functions.

Both numeric coprocessors provide the CPU with additional data types, registers, instructions, and interrupts specifically designed for high-speed numeric coprocessing. The registers in the numeric coprocessors hold constants and temporary results generated during calculations. These registers reduce memory-access time and improve bus availability. The numeric coprocessor register space can be used as a stack or fixed register set.

### 2.4.1 387<sup>™</sup> Numeric Coprocessor Data Types

The 387 numeric coprocessor fully implements the ANSI/IEEE 754 standard for binary floating-point arithmetic. The 387 numeric coprocessor works with seven data types: 32-, 64-, 80-bit floating point, 16-, 32-, 64-bit integers, and 18-digit packed BCD.

The 387 directly extends the CPU instruction set. Extending the instruction set includes trigonometric, logarithmic, exponential, and arithmetic instructions for all data types.

### 2.4.2 387<sup>™</sup> Coprocessor Programming Interface

The 387 numeric coprocessor functions as an I/O device through the I/O ports using addresses 800000F8H and 800000FCH for sending opcodes and operands, as well as for receiving and storing results. The CPU outputs address 800000F8H when writing a command or reading status, and outputs address 800000FCH when writing or reading data.

The CPU has three input signals (BUSY\*, PEREQ, and ERROR\*) that are used for controlling data transfers to and from the 387 numeric coprocessor.

The BUSY\* signal informs the CPU that the 387 numeric coprocessor is executing an instruction and cannot accept another. The WAIT instruction informs the CPU to wait until the 387 numeric coprocessor completes execution of the current instruction.

The PEREQ signal indicates the 387 numeric coprocessor needs to transfer data to or from memory. Because the 387 numeric coprocessor is never a bus master, all input and output data transfers are performed by the CPU. The PEREQ signal is deasserted before the BUSY\* signal is deasserted.

The 387 numeric coprocessor asserts an ERROR\* signal after an instruction results in an error that is not masked by the 387 numeric coprocessor's control register. If an error occurs, the ERROR\* signal is asserted before the BUSY\* signal is deasserted. As a result, the CPU receives an interrupt. If a higher priority interrupt does not exist, the CPU services the interrupt. Interrupts report exception conditions.

The 387 numeric coprocessor detects six different conditions that may occur during instruction execution. If the proper exception mask is not set in the control register, the 387 numeric coprocessor asserts an ERROR\* signal. The ERROR\* signal generates a hardware interrupt (BUSY\*) holding the 387 numeric coprocessor in a busy state. This state is cleared by writing zeroes to I/O port address F0H. The numeric exception conditions recognized by the 387 are as follows:

- 1. Invalid operations (stack fault or IEEE standard invalid operation)
- 2. Divide-by-zero
- 3. Denormalized operand
- 4. Numeric overflow
- 5. Numeric underflow
- 6. Inexact result (precision)

The POST code in the system ROM enables the hardware interrupt. If the POST detects a 387 numeric coprocessor present, it sets the hardware interrupt vector to point to an interrupt routine in ROM. This routine clears the latch on the BUSY\* signal and transfers control to the address pointed to by the nonmaskable interrupt (NMI) vector. The NMI interrupt handler reads the 387 numeric coprocessor's status and determines if the coprocessor caused the NMI. If the 387 coprocessor is not the interrupt source, control passes to the original NMI interrupt handler.

While the CPU executes numeric programs in either real or protected mode, interrupts report exception conditions. Refer to the 80387 *Programmer's Reference Manual* (Intel order number 231917-001) for detailed descriptions of 387 interrupts and exceptions.

All communication between the CPU and the 387 numeric coprocessor is transparent to applications software. The 387 numeric coprocessor operates whether the CPU executes instructions in real-address mode, protected mode, or virtual-8086 mode. The CPU handles all memory accesses. The 387 numeric coprocessor operates on instructions and values passed to it by the CPU and is not aware of the mode of the CPU.

For complete information on programming the 387, refer to the 80387 *Programmer's Reference Manual*, (Intel order number 231917-001).

### 2.4.3 Weitek 3167 Interface

The Weitek 3167 memory-mapped numeric coprocessor communicates with the CPU over the same address bus that connects the main memory to the CPU. Instructions are defined by the 14 least-significant address bits, A(15:2), as well as three of the four byte enable bits (BE2:0).

The 3167 numeric coprocessor responds to memory addresses C0000000H through C1FFFFFH. Although addresses C0000000H to C000FFFFH are normally used, it is important to be sure that other components in the system do not conflict with the address space decoded by the 3167. Writing to this address space causes the 3167 numeric coprocessor to execute instructions and reading causes the 3167 to drive the data bus.

### 2.5 CACHE MEMORY AND TAG

The cache memory and tag logic together implement a direct mapped 64K write-through cache for the CPU. Figure 2-3 shows the cache memory and tag logic.



Figure 2-3. Cache and Tag Memory

### 2.5.1 Cache Memory

The cache memory resides between the CPU and the AT32 bus. The cache memory holds copies of information contained in the system memory for fast CPU access. The cache contains 64K of memory organized into 16K words of 32 bits each. The cache uses a direct-mapped design with write-through to main memory on all write cycles. A CPU access or DMA access to memory locations contained in the cache is called a "hit." For cache hits during read operations, the access occurs at full speed with no wait states. For cache hits during write operations, the access occurs at full speed with one wait state.

Eight  $16K \times 4$  SRAMs comprise the memory portion of the cache. The SRAMs make up the 32-bit word for the bus and are addressed by the least-significant 14 bits of the address bus.

### 2.5.2 Cache Tag Memory

The cache tag memory consists of three 16K x 4 SRAMs. They supply the 12-bit tag address to the address comparator. The least-significant 14 bits of the address bus address the tag SRAMs. A write path between the address bus and the cache tag SRAMs provides a means for cache tag updates.

### 2.5.3 Cache Memory Read Requests

Memory read requests originate from the CPU. Read requests cause the cache data SRAMs to drive data onto the CPU bus. Tag SRAMs are also accessed and the tag data are compared to bits 27 through 16 of the address bus. When tag data matches (a hit), the requested information is present in cache memory and is delivered to the CPU. When tag data does not match (a miss), the requested information is not contained in the cache. In this case, the cache read aborts, and the CPU read request is routed to main memory on the AT32 bus. Data returned from the AT32 bus is updated to the CPU and to the cache memory. Tag SRAMs are updated at the same time as the data from the processor address bus. During an AT32 bus memory read cycle, the CPU remains in a wait state.

### 2.5.4 Cache Memory Write Requests

Memory write requests result in a cache update if the memory location is present in the cache. Write requests are also posted to the AT32 bus so system memory remains coherent with the cache. Updating the cache is the same as a read cache miss update, but without writing to the tag SRAMs.

Memory writes originating from another bus master use the same tag comparison logic for the addressed memory location. If the addressed location is present in the cache, a cache update takes place. Updating the cache is the same as a processor-initiated write request update. This ensures that changes to the system memory are always reflected in the cache memory regardless of who makes the changes.

### 2.6 ADDRESS AND DATA BUFFERS

Bidirectional buffers transfer address and data signals between the CPU bus and the AT32 bus. Four buffers transfer CPU data, D(31:0), and four buffers transfer CPU addresses, A(27:02) and byte enable signals, BE(3:0)\*.

### 2.7 CPU/CACHE CONTROL

An ASIC device, CPU/Cache Control AT (CAT), contains the integrated functionality of the CPU core control logic for the system board.

This device provides the following functions:

- Tracking CPU bus cycle initiation and terminating the cycle based on the specific requirements
- Control signals for address and data buffers
- Control signals for cache and tag memory
- Centralized arbitration mechanism on the AT32 bus among the system CPU, DRAM refresh, ISA bus DMA, and two AT32 coprocessors
- Numeric coprocessor interface and control signals.

## **Onboard Memory**

# 3

### 3.1 INTRODUCTION

This chapter describes the onboard memory that is available for the 302 board in basic and extended configurations.

### 3.2 ONBOARD MEMORY OVERVIEW

The 302 board memory map consists of onboard ROM, onboard 32-bit DRAM, expansion board 32-bit RAM, and the remaining memory mapped to the ISA bus. The system supports up to 40M of fast 32-bit wide memory. The 302 board supports 1, 2, 4, or 8M of onboard DRAM with parity. In addition, two expansion slots are provided for two 32-bit expansion boards (ATMEM4, ATMEM8, or ATMEM16).

The system BIOS and video BIOS may be shadowed in 32-bit memory for enhanced performance. All 32-bit memory except shadowed system BIOS is cacheable. The shadowing and caching features are controlled by the system ROM setup program. See Chapter 13 and Appendix B for more information on ROM. Appendix C specifies the 302 board jumper settings for memory configuration. Table 3-1 shows the system memory address map.

Address	Name	Function
000000:09FFFFH	512K system board	302 board memory (0 - 640K)
0A0000:0BFFFFH	128K video RAM	Reserved for video display controller
0C0000:0C7FFFH	32K video ROM	Reserved for video display controller, BIOS ROM, and video BIOS ROM shadow
0C8000:0DFFFFH	96K I/O expansion ROM/RAM	Reserved for ROM and RAM on I/O adapters
0E0000:0FFFFH	128K system ROM BIOS/shadow RAM	Reserved for system ROM BIOS & shadow of system and video ROM BIOS
100000:FDFFFFH	Extended memory	Extended Memory space
FE0000:FFFFFFH	128K reserved on 302 board	Duplicates code assignment at address 0E0000H
1000000:FFFFFFFH	Extended Memory	Extended Memory space

Table 3-1.Memory Address Map

### 3.3 302 BOARD DRAM

RAM on the 302 board can support configurations of 1, 2, 4, or 8M with parity. This memory is organized as one or two banks of four Single In-line Memory Modules (SIMMs). SIMMs are small boards containing several dynamic random access memory (DRAM) chips. The SIMMs are organized as 256K-bit  $\times$  9 or 1M-bit  $\times$  9. Each bank is 32 data bits wide with 1 parity bit for each byte. Both banks must have the same size SIMMs installed.

The 302 board may be configured to support 100 ns or 85 ns speed SIMMs. The default access speed is 100 ns. All SIMMs must operate at the configured speed or faster.

The 302 board supports three modes of memory operation. The modes are RAS/CAS, fast-paged, and static column. The capability to support the fast-paged and static column modes is selected by jumpers on the 302 board. Although different mode SIMMs can be mixed on the board, the system requires that the jumpers be set for the SIMMs with the lowest performance.

RAS/CAS mode is the standard access mode and has the lowest performance. If the special requirements of fast-paged and static-column mode accesses are not met, then a RAS/CAS mode access will occur even though the board is configured for one of the advanced modes.

Fast-page mode is the default configuration for the 302 board. Fast-page mode DRAM chips are organized into pages. If the current and previous memory cycles are both made to the same DRAM page, then a fast-paged mode access will be executed. Fast-page mode accesses are significantly faster than RAS/CAS mode accesses.

Static-column mode is another advanced mode of operation. It is similar to fastpaged mode in that a static-column access will be executed if the current and previous memory cycles are both made to the same DRAM page. Staticcolumn mode is slightly faster than fast-page mode.

### 3.4 CONFIGURING AT32 MEMORY

The system hardware automatically configures up to 16M of 32-bit memory into one contiguous address range. The 32-bit memory consists of all onboard memory plus any AT32 memory expansion boards installed in the system. POST tests for and reports the amount of memory available.

At reset time the 302 board hardware monitors signals from the total onboard RAM jumpers and configuration signals from the AT32 expansion slots. From this data, the 302 board configures the way memory addresses are allocated to each memory resource. Table 3-2 defines the hierarchy of memory resource allocation.

Table 3-2.	Memory Resource Hierarchy
------------	---------------------------

Memory Resource	Priority Level	Assigned Address Space
Onboard bank 0	1 - highest	Lowest
Onboard bank 1	2 - :	:
Expansion slot 0	3 - :	:
Expansion slot 1	4 - lowest	Highest

The onboard bank 0 is always assigned first and starts at address 0000000H. If present, memory in onboard bank 1 is assigned the next address space, followed by memory in AT32 expansion slot 0. Finally, memory in AT32 expansion slot 1, if any, is assigned. If the total of the onboard and AT32 expansion slot memory is less than 16M, accesses between the top of this 32-bit memory and 16M (address 00FFFFFFH) are made to the ISA bus. Tables 3-3 and 3-4 list examples of some typical memory configurations.

302 Boa 0	rd Bank 1	Expan 0	sion Slots 1	Total
4M	*	-	_	4M
1M	1M	8M	-	10M
4M	4M	8M	16M	32M
1M	-	-	8M	9M

Table 3-3. Memory Installed

Table 3-4. Address Range

Onboard	Slot 0	Slot 1	ISA
4M	-		0400000 - 0FFFFFH
2M	0200000 - 09FFFFFH		0A00000 - 0FFFFFH
8M	0800000 - 0FFFFFH		-
1M	-		0900000 - 0FFFFFH

### 3.5 DRAM REFRESH

All dynamic random access memory requires each memory cell to be refreshed at least once every four ms. To meet this requirement a system wide refresh cycle occurs approximately every 15  $\mu$ s. The 302 board performs the refresh cycle to both ISA bus memory and 32-bit memory simultaneously. During the refresh cycle the processor can still access cache.

An ISA bus secondary requesting agent must initiate refresh cycles at appropriate intervals if it has control of the system for greater than  $15 \,\mu$ s. The 302 board will execute the refresh cycle, and then return control to the secondary requesting agent. Refer to Chapter 5 for more information on the ISA bus.

1 1 1 I L I I

# **Intel AT32 Bus Interface**

# 4

### 4.1 INTRODUCTION

This chapter provides an overview of the AT32 bus. Please contact your local Intel Sales Office if you would like more information on the AT32 bus.

### 4.2 AT32 BUS OVERVIEW

The AT32 bus is a high-performance 32-bit extension to the ISA bus. The AT32 bus supports the CPU with an efficient, high performance interface to standard DRAM.

The AT32 bus is a physical and electrical extension of the Intel ISA bus. All AT32 bus memory expansion boards use the same physical form factor as an ISA bus expansion board. In addition to the two standard ISA bus connectors the AT32 bus adds a third connector. This connector provides additional signals and power which support a full-32 bit data path and enhanced addressing capability.

The 302 board has two AT32 expansion slots J11 and J12. These slots support 8-bit and 16-bit ISA bus expansion boards. In addition, they can accommodate high performance AT32 memory boards with 4, 8, or 16M of DRAM installed on each board. With a maximum of 8M of memory on the boards this allows up to 40M of memory in the system. See Appendix H for the connector pinouts of J11 and J12.

Configuration of AT32 memory boards into the system is jumperless and automatic. The configuration process is a function of the 302 board and is described in Chapter 3.

## **Intel ISA Bus**

# 5

### 5.1 INTRODUCTION

This chapter provides an overview of the ISA bus interface as implemented on the 302 board. Note that the following description only applies to the Intel implementation of the ISA bus.

### 5.2 BUS AGENTS

The ISA bus allows several different bus agents. A bus agent is a physical unit which has an interface directly to the ISA bus. A memory expansion board, a LAN controller, and a modem are all examples of bus agents. The two basic types of bus agents are requesting agents and replying agents. The applicable bus agent type definitions are listed below.

Requesting agent (RA)	The requesting agent initiates an ISA bus cycle. A requesting agent can be either primary or secondary, as explained next.
Primary requesting agent (PRA)	The 302 board is the primary requesting agent. It has immediate access to the ISA bus when control has not been granted to an secondary requesting agent.

Intel386™ MicroComputer Model 302 Board

Secondary requesting agent (SRA)	The SRA is an optional requesting agent that normally does not have immediate control of the ISA bus. The SRA requests control from the primary requesting agent. Multiple SRAs are allowed. An SRA must have a 16-bit bus interface. Eight-bit SRAs are not allowed on the ISA bus.
Replying agent	Any agent which responds to ISA bus cycles initiated by a requesting agent is a replying agent. A replying agent cannot initiate ISA bus cycles.

### 5.2.1 Configuring Bus Agents

The ISA bus services eight agents via 8- and 16-bit portions of the bus. The number of each agent type that is supported is listed in Table 5-1.

Agent Type	No. Supported	Notes
Agent	1 - 9	General agents; PRA + 8
Requesting	1 - 8	PRA+7
Primary Requesting	1	PRA alone
Secondary Requesting	0 - 7	16-bit interface only
Replying	0 - 8	8- or 16-bit interface

 Table 5-1.
 Number of Agents Supported

### 5.2.2 Agent Functional Model

Table 5-2 describes the types of ISA bus cycles in which ISA bus agents may participate.

Type of Agent	Agent's Action		
Primary Requesting Agent	Initiates:	Memory access I/O access DMA access Global refresh	
	Responds to:	Interrupt request DMA request Bus arbitration request	
Secondary Requesting Agent	Initiates:	Memory access I/O access	
	Responds to:	Global refresh	
	Gains Bus Ownership by:	DMA request Assuming bus ownership on DMA grant Assuming responsibility for refresh initiation	
Replying Agent	Responds to:	Memory access I/O access DMA access Global refresh	
	Seeks PRA service through:	Interrupt request DMA request	

Table 5-2. ISA Bus Cycles
#### 5.2.3 General ISA Bus Attributes

Specific attributes of the ISA bus are:

- The memory address is 24 bits long, and the data path is 16 bits wide. This provides a 16M memory address space with 8- and 16-bit data transfers.
- The I/O address is 16 bits long and the data path is 16 bits wide. This
  provides a 64K I/O address space with 8- and 16-bit transfers.
- Interrupt lines support signalling between agents on the bus and the PRA.
- The DMA capability allows 8- or 16-bit data transfers between memory and I/O agents without direct intervention of the CPU on the PRA.
- The PRA performs refresh cycles. The PRA also initiates refresh cycles at the request of an SRA that is in control of the bus, in order to maintain the integrity of the data in system DRAM.
- The ISA bus supports multiple agents. It can support up to nine agents, including one PRA and up to seven SRAs or eight replying agents. A PRA (the 302 board itself) is required in all implementations. SRAs and replying agents are optional.

# 5.3 SIGNAL GROUPS

The ISA bus contains seven groups of signals. These signal groups are:

- Address
- Data
- Cycle control
- Central control
- Interrupt
- Direct memory access (DMA)
- Power

The signal groups support a PRA, which has an onboard DMA controller, optional SRAs, and replying agents providing DMA or I/O memory expansion. In the following signal descriptions the input and output direction designations for each signal are referenced to the PRA. See Appendix H for information about the signal/ISA bus connector pin correspondence.

# 5.3.1 Address Signal Group

At the beginning of a bus cycle, the requesting agent drives signals in the address signal group to specify the address and data transfer width.

A(19:00) (I/O) Address signals, A(19:00), are latched outputs driven by a requesting agent. They are the least-significant 20 bits of the address value. Signals A(19:00) become valid when BUSALE is asserted, and can be latched by responding agents on the falling edge of BUSALE.

Address signals, A(19:16), are driven low during I/O cycles. During refresh cycles, the PRA drives A(07:00) with the DRAM row address to be refreshed.

LA(23:17) (I/O) The unlatched address, LA(23:17), bus signals are driven by a requesting agent. These signals are not latched by the PRA. However, they are valid when BALE is asserted, and they may be latched on the falling edge of this signal. Signals LA(23:17) represent bits 17 through 23 of the memory address presented on the bus. These signals are used by 16-bit replying agents when generating SRDY\*, MCS16\*, and IOCS16\*.

The requesting agent drives LA(23:17) during any transfer cycle. During I/O cycles and refresh cycles, LA(23:17) are driven low. During SRA cycles, LA(23:17) must be valid throughout the entire transfer cycle, and BUSALE must be asserted by the PRA. The PRA drives LA(23:17) to 0 during refresh cycles.

SBHE\* (I/O) The system bus high enable signal, SBHE\*, is asserted by a requesting agent to indicate a data transfer on lines D(15:08) for repliers that support 16-bit transfers. The signals SBHE\* and A0 are used in 16-bit transfers to determine which bytes are being transferred over the data bus.

BUSALE (O)	The bus address latch enable signal, BUSALE, is an address strobe driven by the PRA. Signals LA(23:17) are valid when BUSALE is asserted, and they can be latched on the falling edge of BUSALE. Address signals A(19:00) are latched by the PRA on the leading edge of BUSALE during bus cycles initiated by the PRA.
	All agents must be level sensitive with respect to BUSALE. This means that although the address signal group signals or decodes generated from them may be latched by agents on the falling edge of BUSALE, all agents must monitor the address signal group signals whenever BUSALE is asserted. This is especially important during DMA cycles, SRA cycles, and refresh cycles.
	For all DMA controller cycles (including secondary- requesting-agent cycles), the PRA asserts BUSALE, thereby allowing addresses LA(23:17) to pass through transparent address latches to the bus.
AEN (O)	The DMA address enable signal, AEN, is asserted by the PRA when its CPU is in the hold mode and its DMA controller has control of the bus. The AEN signal is negated by the PRA when its CPU is in control of the bus or when the DMA controller has granted the bus to an SRA. When AEN is asserted, all agents other than the PRA must tri-state their address signal group and cycle control signal group outputs to the ISA bus.
	During DMA cycles, the validity of LA(23:17) and A(19:00) is indicated by the assertion of both AEN and BUSALE. SRAs cannot conduct DMA cycles, because only the PRA can drive the DACKn* and AEN signals.

# 5.3.2 Data Signal Group

The data signal group consists of one set of 16 data bits. Data transfers may occur over either of the two bytes independently of one another.

D(15:0) (I/O) On the data bus, D(15:00), D15 is the most significant bit and D0 is the least significant bit. All 8-bit replying agents must connect only to the least significant 8 data lines, D(07:00). To support communication of 8-bit replying agents to 16-bit requesting agents, the PRA supports both data swapping and transfer reformatting. During odd-byte transfers between a 16-bit requesting agent and an 8-bit replying agent, the PRA drives the data appearing on D(07:00) onto D(15:08). During 16-bit accesses to 8-bit agents, the PRA performs transfer reformatting of 8-bit data by using two consecutive 8-bit ISA bus cycles. This allows the PRA to reformat the replying agent's 8-bit data into the required 16-bit data. The PRA tri-states D(15:00) during refresh operations.

# 5.3.3 Cycle Control Signal Group

This group of signals controls the duration and type of cycles. The group consists of six commands signals, two ready signals, and three signals that specify the cycle type. The command signals define the address space (memory or I/O) and the data direction (read or write). The ready signals modify the command pulse widths to lengthen or shorten the default cycle timing.

MEMR\*, MRDC\* (I/O) The memory read signal, MRDC\*, is asserted when the requesting agent is ready for a replying agent to drive the data bus with the contents of the memory location specified by LA(23:17) and A(19:00). Signal MEMR\* is identical in function to MRDC\*, except that MEMR\* is asserted when the memory read access falls below 1M. Eight-bit agents receive only MEMW\*.

The PRA asserts MEMR\* and MRDC\* during refresh cycles initiated by an SRA in control of the ISA bus.

- MEMW\*, MWTC\* The memory write signal, MWTC\*, is asserted during a write cycle when the requesting agent is driving the data bus. Signal MEMW\* is identical in function to MWTC\*, except that MEMW\* is asserted when the memory write access falls below 1M.
- IORC\* (I/O) The I/O read signal, IORC\*, is asserted when the requesting agent is ready for a replying agent to drive the data bus with the data available from the I/O port specified by A(15:00).

IOWC\* (I/O) The I/O write signal, IOWC\*, is asserted during an I/O write cycle when the requesting agent is driving the data bus, and it is deasserted when a replying agent must clock the data to the I/O port specified by A(15:00).

MCS16* (I)	The memory cycle select signal, MCS16*, is asserted by a 16-bit memory agent to indicate to the requesting agent that a 16-bit cycle can be executed. Replying agents generate MCS16* based on a decode of LA(23:17). Timing requirements placed on MCS16* prevent using the memory command signals MEMR*/MRDC* and MEMW*/MWTC* in the generation of MCS16*. The requesting agent ignores MCS16* on I/O cycles.
IOCS16* (I/O)	The I/O cycle select signal, IOCS16*, is asserted by a 16-bit I/O agent to indicate to the requesting agent that a 16-bit cycle can be executed. Replying agents generate IOCS16* based on a decode of A(15:00). Timing requirements placed on IOCS16* prevent the use of IOWC* and IORC* in generating IOCS16*. The requesting agent ignores IOCS16* on memory cycles.
IOCHRDY (I)	The I/O channel ready signal, IOCHRDY, is an asynchronous ready signal from a replying agent. It is deasserted to force the requesting agent to lengthen the bus cycle by inserting an integral number of wait states (one wait state equals 62.5 ns). The signal IOCHRDY must not be deasserted for longer than 15 $\mu$ s. The PRA ignores IOCHRDY during zero-wait state cycles.
SRDY*	The synchronous ready signal, SRDY*, is asserted by the replying agent to terminate the current bus cycle without any further wait states. The absolute minimum command-pulse width is nominally one SYSCLK period (125 ns) and is known as a zero-wait-state cycle.
	SRAs are not required to support SRDY*. The PRA ignores SRDY* when accessing 8-bit replying agents.

MEMREF\* (I/O) The refresh signal, MEMREF\*, is asserted during a DRAM refresh cycle. Only memory-read cycles may occur while MEMREF\* is asserted. The address present on A(07:00) is the refresh row address used by the memory bus agent.

AN SRA can, if it is the current bus owner, tri-state its address, command, and data drivers and assert MEMREF\*. Doing so forces the PRA to conduct a refresh cycle. SRAs must force a refresh every 15  $\mu$ s if they retain ownership of the bus, or the contents of the system DRAM will be lost. When a refresh cycle is initiated in this manner, the PRA asserts A(07:00) and MEMR\*/MRDC\*. Because refresh cycles occur at a period of 15  $\mu$ s, each of the 256 refresh addresses is refreshed at least once every 4 ms.

# 5.3.4 Central Control Signal Group

The central control group consists of special timing, control, and error signals. This section describes each signal of the group.

SECMAST\* The secondary master signal, SECMAST\*, is asserted by an SRA to gain control of the bus after receiving the appropriate DACKn\* from the PRA. When SECMAST\* is asserted, all other requesting agents must tri-state their address, data, and control signals. After SECMAST\* is asserted, the SRA must wait at least one SYSCLK period before driving the address and data group signals, and it must wait at least two SYSCLK periods before driving the cycle control group signals.

If SECMAST\* is asserted for longer than 15  $\mu$ s, the SRA must initiate refresh cycles to maintain DRAM data integrity. Note that only DMA channels programmed in the cascade mode may be used by SRAs wishing to gain control of the ISA bus.

IOCHCK* (I)	The I/O channel check signal, IOCHCK*, can be asserted by any agent to mark an error condition that cannot be corrected, such as a memory parity error. Signal IOCHCK* must be asserted for at least 15 ns for the PRA to recognize that an error condition has occurred.
RSTDEV (O)	The reset signal, RSTDEV, is asserted by the PRA to initialize all agents on the ISA bus after power-up or during a low-voltage condition.
SYSCLK (O)	The system clock signal, SYSCLK, has a frequency of 8 MHz with a 50% duty cycle, and is driven by the PRA. Bus cycle times are directly proportional to the clock period. All synchronous signals on the ISA bus are synchronous to SYSCLK.
	Bus cycles are lengthened by IOCHRDY or shortened by SRDY* in integer multiples of one-half the SYSCLK period. For example, SRDY* could be asserted during a 16-bit cycle to reduce the command pulse width to 1.5 SYSCLK periods. Likewise, IOCHRDY could lengthen a 16-bit cycle to N + 2.5 SYSCLK periods, where N is the number of wait states that the accessed device requests. Since the DMA controller operates off of a 4-MHz clock, DMA cycles are extended in multiples of 2 SYSCLK periods.
84OSC (O)	The oscillator output signal, 84OSC, is a 50% duty cycle clock signal with a frequency of 14.31818 MHz. Signal 84OSC is not synchronous with either SYSCLK or any other signals on the ISA bus, so it must not be used in applications which require synchronization with the bus. It is intended for use in timing or counting operations only.

# 5.3.5 Interrupt Signal Group

The interrupt signal group consists of a set of signals replying agents use to obtain interrupt service from a requesting agent.

IRQ (I) An interrupt can be requested by asserting an IRQ line. The line must remain asserted until the interrupt is acknowledged by the appropriate interrupt-service software routine. The interrupt request lines are IRQ(15,14,12:09, 07:03)

# 5.3.6 Direct Memory Access Signal Group

The DMA signal group controls DMA service and transfer of ISA bus ownership from the PRA to an SRA.

DRQ(I)	The DMA request signals, DRQ(7:5, 3:0), are asynchronous channel requests used to gain either DMA service or control of the ISA bus from the PRA. DMA service or bus control can be attained by asserting a DRQ line and keeping it asserted until the corresponding DACK* line is asserted by the PRA. When second requesting agents wish to gain control of the bus, they must only use DMA channels that have been programmed to operate in the cascade mode.
DACK* (O)	The DMA request acknowledge signals, DACK(7:5, 3:0), are driven by the PRA to acknowledge a DMA request DRQ(7:5, 3:0). I/O repliers use DMA acknowledge signals for address selection during DMA cycles when AEN is asserted.
TC (O)	The terminal count signal, TC, is asserted by the PRA when any one of its DMA channels has reached its terminal count, signalling the end of the pre- programmed DMA transfer.

# 5.3.7 **Power Group**

The ISA bus provides DC power at  $\pm$  5V,  $\pm$  12V, and 0V (ground).

+ 5 Volts	Pins 3 and 29 on the non-component side of the 8-bit connector, as well as, pin 16 on the non-component side of the 16-bit connector supply current at a $+5V$ level for 16-bit agents. Pins 3 and 29 on the non- component side of the 8-bit connector supply current at a $+5V$ level for 8-bit agents.
- 5 Volts	Pin 5 on the non-component side of the 8-bit connector supplies current at a $-5V$ level.
+ 12 Volts	Pin 9 on the non-component side of the 8-bit connector supplies current at a +12V level.
- 12 Volts	Pin 7 on the non-component side of the 8-bit connector supplies current at a $-12V$ level.
Ground	Pins 1, 10, and 13 on the non-component side of the 8-bit connector, as well as, pin 18 on the non- component side of the 16-bit connector provide a return path for the current supplied by the other power pins for 16-bit agents. Pins 1, 10, and 13 on the non-component side of the 8-bit connector provide this return path for 8-bit agents.

# 8254 Programmable Interval Timer

# 6

# 6.1 INTRODUCTION

The system timer for the 302 board is an Intel 82C54 programmable interval timer (PIT). The PIT contains three independent 16-bit counters counting down in binary coded decimal (BCD) or binary. The counters are read, written, and configured using common control logic. Each counter operates in one of the following six modes:

Mode 0: interrupt on terminal count

- Mode 1: hardware triggered one-shot
- Mode 2: rate generator
- Mode 3: square wave generator
- Mode 4: software triggered strobe
- Mode 5: hardware triggered strobe

# 6.2 COUNTER DESCRIPTION

Common clock input pins (CLKC) drive each of the three PIT counters. The frequency of the common clock is 1.19318 MHz. The output of counter 0 (PITIRQ) is connected to IRQ of the interrupt controller module (INTC1). This output provides the system-timer interrupt for time-of-day, disk timeout, and other system timing functions. System hardware uses counter 1 to generate a DRAM refresh-operation request signal. Counter 2 generates the tone for the system speaker.

Each counter contains the following elements: a control register, a status register, a 16-bit counting element (CE), a pair of 8-bit-counter-input latches (CIL, CIH), and a pair of 8-bit-counter-output latches (COL, COH). Each counter also has a clock input for loading and decrementing the CE. The CE is a mode-defined input for controlling both the counter and an OUT signal. The counter mode and condition of CE controls the OUT signal state and function. Table 6-1 lists the functions of the counters, the respective gates, and the clock in and clock out signals.

Counter	Signal	Function
0, System timer	GATE 0 CLK0 OUT0C	Always on 1.193 MHz (CLKC) IRQ0
1, Refresh request	GATE 1 CLK1 O1	Always on 1.193 MHz (CLKC) Request refresh (REFTIME)
2, Speaker frequency	GATE 2 CLK2 O2	Enable speaker (ENBSPK) 1.193 MHz (CLKC) Speaker signal (SPKFRQ)

#### Table 6-1.Counter Functions, Gates, and Signals

Figure 6-1 illustrates the internal registers of a counter. The figure shows the status register, the actual counter, count registers (CR), output latches (OL). The subscripts M and L stand for "most significant byte" and "least significant byte" respectively.





# 6.2.1 Control and Status Registers

The control register stores the mode and command information for each of the counters. Writing a byte to address (043H) loads the control register. The byte contains a pointer to the desired counter, the type of command, and information about the count format.

System software uses a status register to monitor the counters and read back the contents of the control register.

# 6.2.2 Counting Element (CE)

The counting element is a 16-bit synchronous down counter. Writing one or two bytes in the counter input loads the CE. The CE loads or decrements on the falling edge of the CLKC signal. The CE contains the maximum count when loading 0 and wraps around to FFFFH in binary operation.

# 6.3 **PROGRAMMING THE PIT**

Programming the PIT requires writing a control word and initial counts to the three PIT counters at power-up. Register F receives the control word while each counter receives the initial count at the addresses listed in Table 6-2.

Table 6-2.Counter/Timer Address Map

Address	Function
040H	Counter 0, read/write
041H	Counter 1, read/write
042H	Counter 2, read/write
043H	Control register, write only

# 6.3.1 Control Register (043H)

Programming a counter requires writing control words to control register 043H. Control words specify the counter, command, mode, and numeric format (BCD or binary). Control register 043H is write-only.

Bits 7 through 4 of this register indicate the counter and the command to be executed. Bits 3 through 1 of this register select the mode of operation as defined in Section 6.1. Bit 0 indicates the countdown format. Table 6-3 lists the contents of the fields and the associated commands.

Bit	Function		
Bits 7:4 0000 0001 0010 0011	Command to be executed Latch counter 0 Read/write counter 0, LSB only Read/write counter 0, MSB only Read/write counter 0, LSB then MSB		
0100 0101 0110 0111	Latch counter 1 Read/write counter 1, LSB only Read/write counter 1, MSB only Read/write counter 1, LSB then MSB		
1000 1001 1010 1011	Latch counter 2 Read/write counter 2, LSB only Read/write counter 2, MSB only Read/write counter 2, LSB then MSB		
11xx	Read-back command		
Bits 3:1 000 001 x10 x11 100 101	Operating mode selection (These bits are "don't care" during the latch counter command.) Mode 0 Mode 1 Mode 2 Mode 3 Mode 4 Mode 5		
Bit 0 0 1	Binary or BCD count down format (This bit must be 0 during read/write command.) Binary (16-bit) count down BCD count down (4 decades)		

 Table 6-3.
 Control Register Bit Definition

# **READ/WRITE COUNTER COMMAND**

Observe the following conventions when loading a counter using the read/write counter command:

- Each counter control word must be written before loading the initial count.
- Writing an initial count must follow the format specified in the control word. Load either the least significant byte (LSB) only, most significant byte (MSB) only, or load the LSB then MSB.
- When writing the LSB and MSB, take care to avoid relinquishing control.

A new initial count can be written into the counter at any time after programming. Writing a new initial count does not require rewriting the control word as long as the programmed format is observed.

When reading a counter, the following two conventions must be observed:

- The count must be latched.
- When reading the LSB and MSB, control must not be relinquished between modes.

#### LATCH-COUNTER COMMAND

When issuing a latch counter command, the counter output latches (COL and COH) latch the current state of the counting element. COL and COH remain latched until read by the CPU or until the counter is reprogrammed. Once read or reprogrammed, COL and COH return to the value currently in the counting element.

Latch-counter commands can be issued to more than one counter before reading the first counter. Multiple latch-counter commands issued to the same counter without reading the counter are ignored, except for the first command.

# **READ-BACK COMMAND**

The read-back command checks the count value, programmed mode, and the current state of the OUT signal and NULL count flag of the selected counters. Latched status bytes (OUT and NULL) remain until the counter is read or reprogrammed. Table 6-4 lists the bit values and function for the read-back command byte.

Bit/Value	Function
Bits 7:6	Read-back command specified
Bit 7= 1	Specifies the read-back command.
Bit 6= 1	Bits 7 and 6 are always set to 1.
Bits 5:4 Bit 5 = 0 Bit 4 = 0	Latch counting element/status (LC and LS) If LS and LC = 0, status returns on the first read from the counter. The next one or two reads from the counter results in the count being returned. Latch the state of the counting element in COL and COH. Latch the status of selected counters into the status register.
Bits 3:0	Counter selection (C2:C0)
Bit $3 = 1$	Select counter 2.
Bit $2 = 1$	Select counter 1.
Bit $1 = 1$	Select counter 0.
Bit $0 = 0$	Must be zero.

 Table 6-4.
 Read-back Command Format

Table 6-5 lists the bit values and function for the latched status byte.

Bit/Value	Function
Bit 7	OUT signal state
0	OUT signal 0 (low)
1	OUT signal 1 (high)
Bit 6 0 1	NULL count flag condition Counter loaded from the counter input registers, count can be read. Write to the control register or the counter, but the new value has not been loaded into CE.
Bits 5:4	Byte transfer during read/write commands
00	Reserved
01	R/W least-significant byte
10	R/W most-significant byte
11	R/W least-significant byte then most-significant byte
Bits 3:1	Operating mode selection
000	Mode 0 selected
001	Mode 1 selected
010	Mode 2 selected
011	Mode 3 selected
100	Mode 4 selected
101	Mode 5 selected
Bit 0	Binary or BCD count down format
0	Binary (16-bit) count down
1	BCD count down (4 decades)

Table 6-5.Format of a Latched Status Byte

# 8259 Programmable Interrupt Controllers

# 7.1 INTRODUCTION

The system interrupt controllers (U32 and U45) are Intel 82C59 programmable interrupt controllers (PICs) (Figure 7-1 diagrams a PIC). U32 is located at addresses 20H and 21H and configured for master operation. U45 is a slave device located at addresses A0H and A1H. The interrupt request output signal from U32 connects to the interrupt request input channel 2 (IR2) of the PIC master (see Figure 7-2).

U45 has seven prioritized interrupt levels and the PIC slave has eight. The PIC minimizes the software and real time overhead in handling multi-level priority interrupts.

The PIC functions as an overall manager in an interrupt-driven system environment. It accepts incoming interrupt requests from the various peripherals attached to the system unit. The PIC checks the interrupt requests for priority, determines whether the incoming request has a higher priority value than the current level, then sends an INTR pulse to the CPU. The CPU acknowledges the INT request with an INTA signal.

Configuring a variety of priority assignment modes any time during system operation structures the system interrupt (based on the system environment).

Each peripheral device has a special program associated with its specific functional or operational requirements called an "Interrupt Service Routine." The PIC, after receiving an interrupt request from the peripheral device, sends the address information to the CPU. This forces the program counter to the starting interrupt vector address. Interrupt vector addresses are stored in a table in low memory (locations 0 to 1024).



#### Figure 7-1. PIC Block Diagram



Figure 7-2. Maskable Interrupt Logic

# 7.2 INTERRUPT CONTROLLER ARCHITECTURE

Each PIC contains an interrupt request register, an in-service register, an interrupt mask register, and a priority resolver.

# 7.2.1 Interrupt Request Register (IRR) and In-service Register (ISR)

The IRR and ISR handle the interrupts at the input lines. The IRR stores interrupt levels which are requesting service and the ISR stores interrupt levels currently being serviced.

# 7.2.2 Interrupt Mask Register

Each interrupt line can be individually masked by the interrupt mask register (IMR). Disabling an interrupt line prevents the IMR from generating an interrupt. Masking a higher priority input does not affect the interrupt request lines of lower priority.

# 7.2.3 **Priority Resolver**

The priority resolver determines the priorities of the bits set in the IRR. The priority resolver, following the first INTA pulse from the CPU, selects the highest priority and strobes it into the corresponding bit of the ISR.

## 7.3 INTERRUPTS

The system module utilizes the following four interrupt types:

- Maskable interrupts
- Nonmaskable interrupts
- Hardware interrupts
- Software interrupts

The CPU executes instructions which allow software to enable or disable the maskable interrupt (INTR). External hardware on the 302 board, under software control, masks the nonmaskable interrupt (NMI). The NMI cannot be masked off within the CPU. The NMI mask register appears at I/O address 70H. The NMI mask register shares address 70H with the real-time clock and the configuration memory device (lower six bits).

# 7.3.1 Maskable Interrupts

All maskable hardware interrupts to the CPU are processed by the PICs. These devices generate interrupts on the CPU interrupt line (INTR). These interrupts can be masked in the CPU by using the clear (CLI) instruction. Any or all interrupts can be masked using the interrupt mask register (IMR). However, the interrupt vector of the PIC must be initialized in advance.

Fifteen interrupt levels are available by cascading the two interrupt controllers. The slave controller signals the master to cause an interrupt. The base I/O addresses are: INTC1 (master) 20H and INTC2 (slave) A0H.

Table 7-1 lists each interrupt priority level, the PIC that monitors that level, the name of the interrupt, and the source of the interrupt.

Priority	PIC No.	Int No.	Interrupt Source	
1	†	NMI	Parity error detected	
2	1	IRQ0	Interval timer (PIT), counter 0 output	
3	1	IRQ1	Full keyboard output buffer	
	1	IRQ2	Interrupt from controller 2 (cascade)	
4	2	IRQ8	Real-time clock INT	
5	2	IRQ9	Software redirected to INT 0AH (IRQ2)	
6	2	IRQ10	Reserved	
7	2	IRQ11	Reserved	
8	2	IRQ12	Auxiliary device	
9	2	IRQ13	INT from coprocessor	
10	2	IRQ14	Fixed disk controller	
11	2	IRQ15	Reserved	
12	1	IRQ3	COM2	
13	1	IRQ4	COM1 (primary)	
14	1	IRQ5	LPT2	
15	1	IRQ6	Floppy disk controller	
16	1	IRQ7	LPT1 (primary)	

Table 7-1. Interrupt Levels

<sup>†</sup> I/O address 70H, bit 7, controls the NMI signal.

There is always the possibility that more than two interrupts will demand servicing at the same time. The PICs determine the priority of each interrupt and process the requests one at a time by transferring the control of the CPU to the higher priority service routine first.

# 7.3.2 Non-maskable Interrupts

Non-maskable interrupts (NMI) are caused by:

- Detection of parity error during a memory read on either the 302 board or AT32 bus memory boards.
- Detection of parity errors on expansion boards or on any 8- or 16-bit board that pulls the IOCHCK\* line low.
- Detection of a software interrupt to the NMI routine (BIOS call).

Enable or disable the NMI interrupt by:

- Clearing mask flip-flop: OUT 70H, 00H. Executing the instruction enables the NMI.
- Setting mask flip-flop: OUT 70H, 80H. Executing the instruction disables the NMI.

At power-on, the NMI is disabled until system software executes the clear mask instruction.

# 7.4 **PROGRAMMING THE PIC**

Each PIC is programmed using initialization command words (ICWs) and operation command words (OCWs). The ICWs bring the PIC to a starting point before beginning normal system operation. The OCWs tells the PIC which interrupt mode to operate in. Table 7-2 lists the I/O addresses and data for the two interrupt controllers.

Interrupt Controller	I/O Port	Read Data	Write Data
INTC1 Master (IRQ0-IRQ7)	IRR 0020H	ICW1 ISR	OCW2 OCW3
	0021H	ICW3 IMR OCW1	ICW2 ICW4
INTC2 Slave (IRQ8-IRQ15)	IRR 00A0H	ICW1 ISR	OCW2 OCW3
	00A1H	ICW3 IMR OCW1	ICW2 ICW4

#### Table 7-2. Interrupt Controller I/O Address and I/O Data

# 7.4.1 Initialization Command Word

The initialization command word (ICW) initializes the system upon power-on. Before normal operation begins, the PICs must be brought to a starting point by writing a sequence of four bytes to each controller. Refer to Figures 7-3 and 7-4 for a description of the formats of ICWs. Figure 7-5 shows the initialization sequence of the ICWs.



Figure 7-3. Command Word Format (ICW1, ICW2, and ICW3)







Figure 7-5. Initialization Sequence Diagram

The initialization sequence starts by writing byte ICW1 to address 020H (0A0H) with bit 4 set to 1. The interrupt controller interprets this as the start of an initialization sequence and does the following:

- 1. Resets the ICW counter to zero
- 2. Selects the fixed priority mode
- 3. Assigns the highest priority to IR0
- 4. Clears the interrupt mask register and in-service register
- 5. Sets the slave mode address to 7
- 6. Disables the special mask mode
- 7. Selects the interrupt request register for status read operations.

The next three I/O writes to address 021H (0A1H) load bytes ICW(2:4). Figures 7-6 and 7-7 illustrate the initialization formats from the power-on test routine.



Figure 7-6. Power-on Formats (ICW1 and ICW2)



Figure 7-7. Power-on Formats (ICW3 and ICW4)

# 7.4.2 Operational Command Word

Operation command words (OCWs) command the PICs to operate in various interrupt PIC modes. These modes are: fully nested, rotating priority, special mask, and polled. Each PIC has three OCWs which can be programmed to change the configuration and to monitor controller operation.

OCW1 can be written to address 021H (0A1H) any time the controller is not in initialization mode. OCW2 and OCW3 are written to address 020H (0A0H). Writing to address 020H (0A0H), with bit 4 set to 0, places the controller in operational mode and loads OCW2 (if data bit 3 = 0) or OCW3 (if data bit 3 = 1). Figures 7-8 and 7-9 show the OCW instruction sequence.


OM-00259

Figure 7-8. Command Word Format (OCW1 and OCW2)



#### Figure 7-9. Command Word Format (OCW3)

# **Direct Memory Access (DMA)**



#### 8.1 INTRODUCTION

Direct memory access (DMA) is a process where data is transferred between I/O devices (peripherals) and system DRAM without the direct participation of the CPU. The CPU establishes the parameters for the data transfer, but the DMA controllers perform the actual data transfers. This leaves the CPU free for other tasks. Figure 8-1 illustrates the major functional blocks of a DMA controller.

The 302 board uses two DMA controllers (DMA1 and DMA2). Each DMA controller has four DMA channels that are independently programmable, and each controller generates the memory addresses and control signals necessary to transfer information. The controllers are cascaded together to provide seven DMA channels: four channels for transfers to 8-bit peripherals (DMA1) and three channels for transfers to 16-bit peripherals (DMA2). DMA2 port 0 provides the cascade interconnection for the two DMA controllers (see Figure 8-2).



Figure 8-1. DMA Controller Block Diagram



Figure 8-2. DMA Logic

## 8.2 DMA OPERATION

The DMA controller and I/O devices use the DMA request (DRQ) and DMA acknowledge (DACK\*) signals for handshaking. An I/O device activates the DRQ line when requesting an 8- or 16-bit data transfer. The I/O device asserts the byte or data word on the data bus after receiving an active DACK\* signal from the DMA controller. During normal operation, the DMA controller can be in an idle cycle, program condition, or active cycle.

#### 8.2.1 Idle Cycle

The DMA controller enters the idle cycle when no I/O device requests service. During the idle cycle, the DMA controller samples the DRQ input pins at a frequency of 4.0 MHz. The DMA controller also samples the chip select (CS\*) signal and determines if the CPU is attempting to access the DMA controller registers. If the CPU is attempting an access, the controller remains in the idle cycle. If a DRQ signal occurs on an unmasked channel, the DMA controller exits the idle cycle.

## 8.2.2 Active Cycle

The DMA controller enters the active cycle when a DRQ signal occurs on an unmasked channel. During an active cycle, the DMA controller operates in one of the following four modes:

- Single-transfer mode
- Block-transfer mode
- Demand-transfer mode
- Cascade mode

#### SINGLE-TRANSFER MODE

During single-transfer mode, the DMA controller makes one transfer. After each transfer, the current word count decrements, and the current address either decrements or increments. When the current word count changes from 0 to FFFFH, TC is generated and auto-initialization occurs. Auto-initialization, enabled by a bit in the mode register, restores channels to their original condition.

An I/O device must hold the DRQ signal active until a corresponding DACK\* signal becomes active. If the I/O device holds the DRQ signal active throughout the single transfer, the hold request (HRQ) signal goes inactive for one full cycle, before it is reasserted. This gives the CPU an opportunity to execute a bus access between successive DMA transfers. Another single transfer begins when the DMA controller receives a new HLDA signal.

#### **BLOCK-TRANSFER MODE**

During block-transfer mode, a DRQ signal activates the DMA controller. The DRQ signal remains active during an active DACK\* signal. The controller continually makes block transfers during the service until it encounters a TC signal, caused by the word count going to FFFFH, or an external end of process (EOP\*) signal. If the DMA channel is programmed for auto-initialization, an auto-initialization occurs at the end of the block-transfer service.

#### DEMAND-TRANSFER MODE

During demand-transfer mode, the DMA controller continually makes DMA transfers until it encounters a TC signal, an external EOP\* signal, or when the current DRQ signal goes inactive. An inactive DRQ signal, before the last working state of the cycle, prevents another transfer. Current address registers store intermediate values of addresses between transfers. Similarly, current word count registers store intermediate values of word counts between transfers. An EOP\* signal causes an auto-initialization at the end of the DMA controller service.

#### CASCADE MODE

During cascade mode, both DMA controllers are cascaded together for system expansion. The HRQ and HLDA signals from the slave DMA controller connect to the DRQ and DACK\* signals of the master DMA controller. This allows the master controller to request the slave controller to propagate through the priority network circuitry of the master device. The cascade channel of the master controller prioritizes the slave controller and does not output any address or control signals of its own. The DMA controller responds only to signals DRQ and DACK\*. All other outputs, except the HRQ signal, are disabled.

# 8.3 Transfer Types

Each of the four transfer modes perform three types of transfers: read, write, and verify.

Read Transfer	A read transfer moves data from memory to an I/O device by generating the memory address and asserting the MEMR* and IOW* signals during the same cycle.
Write Transfer	A write transfer moves data from an I/O device to memory by generating the memory address and asserting the MEMW* and IOR* signals during the same cycle.
Verify Transfer	A verify transfer is used for diagnostics. In this type of transfer, the DMA operates as if it is performing a read or write transfer by generating a memory address, signal HRQ, and signal DACK*. However, memory and I/O control lines remain inactive.

# 8.4 DMA CHANNELS

Each DMA controller has four channels. DMA1 supports channels zero through three (for 8-bit transfers), and DMA2 supports channels four through seven (for 16-bit transfers). Channel four is used to cascade from DMA1 to DMA2. All HOLD requests for DMA1 are processed via DMA2, channel four. This forces all channels in DMA1 to operate at a higher priority than those in DMA2. Channel zero has the highest priority and channel seven the lowest. DMA channels 0-3 are 8-bit channels and DMA channels 5-7 are 16-bit channels. Table 8-1 lists each channel's function.

Channel	Controller	Function
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7	1 1 1 2 2 2 2 2	Refresh Streaming tape (typical) Disk (floppy) Spare Cascade Spare Spare Spare Spare

Table 8-1.DMA Channel Assignment

The system assigns an upper- and lower-page register to each DMA channel. The page registers supply the top 12 bits of each address for DMA1 (8-bit transfers) and the top 11 bits of each address for DMA2 (16-bit transfers). The DMA controller supplies the bottom 16 bits of each address. The page registers are implemented external to the DMA controllers.

The DMA controllers and page registers provide 28 bits of address for DMA1 and 27 bits of the address for DMA2. Generated addresses do not cross page boundaries (64K for channels 0 to 3, and 128K for channels 5 to 7).

The DMA controllers and page registers must be initialized before beginning a DMA transfer. Initialization consists of loading the starting address, the number of bytes, and the direction of transfer. The CPU reads and writes the DMA controllers' internal registers when the controller is selected while the CPU controls the bus. All registers, including those not used, are written to by the system BIOS at power-up.

## 8.5 **PROGRAMMING THE DMA CONTROLLERS**

The controllers can be programmed any time except when the HLDA signal is asserted. The CPU ensures that no DMA activity occurs on the channel being programmed. To prevent a conflict, disable the DMA controller or mask the DMA channel before programming any registers. Disabling external interrupts protects the sections of code that set up the registers. This prevents another routine from changing the state of the circuit.

# 8.6 DMA INTERNAL REGISTERS

The DMA internal registers control DMA transfers. Table 8-2 lists all DMA internal registers and their sizes.

Register Name	Size	Number
Base-address registers	16 bits	4
Base-word-count registers	16 bits	4
Current-address registers	16 bits	4
Current-word-count registers	16 bits	4
Temporary-address register	16 bits	1
Temporary-word-count register	16 bits	1
Status register	8 bits	1
Command register	8 bits	1
Temporary register	8 bits	1
Mode registers	6 bits	4
Mask register	4 bits	1
Request register	4 bits	1

Table 8-2. DMA Internal Registers

# 8.6.1 Address and Count Registers

Address registers and count registers specify the address and length of the transfer. These registers are 16 bits, requiring two successive eight-bit read or write operations. The byte pointer flip-flop must be cleared before accessing these registers. This guarantees that the first operation transfers the low-order byte and the second operation transfers the high-order byte. After clearing the byte flip-flop, the program must retain control until both bytes are written or read.

Table 8-3 lists the I/O port address assignments for the DMA address and count registers.

Controller	I/O Address	Command Codes
	000H	CH0 base and current address
	001H	CH0 base and current word count
	002H	CH1 base and current address
DMA1	003H	CH1 base and current word count
	004H	CH2 base and current address
	005H	CH2 base and current word count
	006H	CH3 base and current address
	007H	CH3 base and current word count
	0C0H	CH4 base and current address
	0C2H	CH4 base and current word count
	0C4H	CH5 base and current address
DMA2	0C6H	CH5 base and current word count
	0C8H	CH6 base and current address
	0CAH	CH6 base and current word count
	0CCH	CH7 base and current address
	0CEH	CH7 base and current word count

 Table 8-3.
 I/O Port Addresses for DMA Address and Count Registers

#### **CURRENT ADDRESS REGISTER**

Each DMA channel has a 16-bit current-address register for storing the value of the address used during DMA transfers. The address automatically increments or decrements after each transfer, and the intermediate values of the address are stored in the register during the transfer. The CPU reads or writes the register in successive bytes while in the program state. During auto-initialize, the original values of the current-address register are automatically restored from the base count register after the EOP\* signal goes active. An I/O device or TC generates EOP\*. Note that EOP\* is not available as an input of the 302 board due to external gating and no ISA bus signal dedicated to this function.

#### **CURRENT WORD-COUNT REGISTER**

Each DMA channel has a 16-bit current-word-count register for determining the number of transfers performed. The actual number of transfers is one more than the number programmed in the register (programming a count of 25 results in 26 transfers). The register loads or reads in successive bytes by the CPU in the program condition. The word count decrements after each transfer until the value in the register goes from zero to FFFFH. At FFFFH, the TC is generated and auto-initialization occurs. During auto-initialization, the original values of the current-address register are automatically restored from the base-count register after the EOP\* signal is asserted. An I/O device or TC generates EOP\*. If it is not auto-initialized, the register will have a count of FFFFH after TC.

#### BASE ADDRESS AND BASE WORD-COUNT REGISTERS

Each DMA channel has a pair of base-address registers and base-word-count registers. These 16-bit registers are programmed with the desired address and word count. During auto-initialization, these values are transferred to the current-address registers and current-word-count registers. The base registers are automatically loaded when corresponding current registers are written. The base registers cannot be read by the CPU.

## 8.6.2 Program-control Registers

Program-control registers assign DMA transfer operations. Table 8-4 lists the I/O port addresses for the control registers.

Addı DMAC1	ress DMAC2	Operation	Command Codes
008H 009H 009H 00AH 00BH 00CH 00DH 00DH 00EH 00FH	0D0H 0D2H 0D4H 0D6H 0D8H 0DAH 0DAH 0DCH 0DEH	Read Write Write Write Write Read Write Write Write	Read status register Write command register Write request register Write single-mask register bit Write mode register Clear byte-pointer flip-flop Read temporary register Master-clear register Clear mask register Write all mask register bits

 Table 8-4.
 Control Register I/O Port Addresses

# 8.6.3 Command Register

The 8-bit command register controls the overall operation of the DMA subsystem. The CPU programs the command register during a program condition. A reset or a master clear instruction clears the command register. Table 8-5 shows the bit assignments for the command register.

Bit/Value	Function
Bit 7	DACK* polarity configuration bit
1	DACK* active-high
0	DACK* active low (default)
Bit 6	DRQ polarity configuration bit
1	DRQ active low
0	DRQ active high (default)
Bit 5	Extended write bit
1	Extended write selected
0	Late write selected (default)
Bit 4	Priority scheme select bit
1	Rotating-priority scheme is used
0	Fixed-priority scheme is used (default)
Bit 3	Compressed timing bit
1	Compressed timing is enabled
0	Normal timing is used (default)
Bit 2	Enable/disable bit
1	Controller is disabled
0	Controller is enabled (default)
Bit 1	Channel address hold-enable bit
1	CH0 address hold is enabled
0	CH0 address hold is disabled (default)
Bit 0	Memory-to-memory enable bit
1	Memory-to-memory is enabled for CH0 and CH1
0	Memory-to-memory is disabled (default)

 Table 8-5.
 Command Register Bit Assignments

## 8.6.4 Mode Register

Each DMA channel has an associated 6-bit mode register. The mode registers specify the channel operating mode. When the CPU writes to a mode register during a program state, bits 0 and 1 specify the channel selected. Table 8-6 lists the bit assignments for the mode register.

Bit/Value	Function
Bits 7:6	Mode selection bits
00	Demand mode is selected
01	Single mode is selected
10	Block mode is selected
11	Cascade mode is selected
Bit 5	Address increment/decrement bit
1	Address decrement is selected
0	Address increment is selected
Bit 4	Auto-initialization enable bit
1	Auto-initialization is enabled
0	Auto-initialization is disabled
Bits 3:2	Transfer bits
00	Verify transfer
01	Write transfer
10	Read transfer
11	Illegal
Bits 1:0	Channel select bits
00	CH 0 is selected
01	CH 1 is selected
10	CH 2 is selected
11	CH 3 is selected

Table 8-6.Mode Register Bit Assignments

#### 8.6.5 Request Register

Each DMA controller has an associated 4-bit request register. Each channel has a request bit associated with it in the 4-bit request register. The system software sets or resets each request-register bit separately to request use of the corresponding DMA channel. A TC or EOP\* signal clears each request-register bit. A system reset clears the entire request register. The DMA channel must be in the block transfer mode and the appropriate registers must be set before initiating this request. Table 8-7 lists the format for writing to the request register.

Bit/Value	Function
Bits 7:3	Not used
Bit 2	Set/reset request bit
1	Request bit is set
0	Request bit is reset
Bits 1:0	Channel selection bits
00	CH 0 is selected
01	CH 1 is selected
10	CH 2 is selected
11	CH 3 is selected

Table 8-7.	<b>Request Register Update</b>
------------	--------------------------------

## 8.6.6 Mask Register

Each DMA channel has an associated mask bit. The mask bit disables incoming DRQ signals. Each mask register bit is set when the associated DMA channel activates the EOP\* signal, if auto-initialization is not programmed in the DMA channel. The system software sets or clears each mask-register bit separately. A system reset sets the entire mask register and disables all DMA requests. Two commands are associated with the mask register: Write single mask bit and Write all mask bits. Tables 8-8 and 8-9 list the bit positions for both commands.

Bit/Value	Function
Bits 7:3	Not used
Bit 2	Set/reset mask bit
1	Set mask bit
0	Reset mask bit
Bits 1:0	Select channel mask bits
00	CH 0 mask bit selected
01	CH 1 mask bit selected
10	CH 2 mask bit selected
11	CH 3 mask bit selected

Table 8-8. Write Single Mask Bit Assignments

Bit/Value	Function
Bits 7:4	Not used
Bit 3	Set/reset channel 3 mask bit
1	Set CH 3 mask bit
0	Reset CH 3 mask bit
Bit 2	Set/reset channel 2 mask bit
1	Set CH 2 mask bit
0	Reset CH 2 mask bit
Bit 1	Set/reset channel 1 mask bit
1	Set CH 1 mask bit
0	Reset CH 1 mask bit
Bit 0	Set/reset channel 0 mask bit
1	Set CH 0 mask bit
0	Reset CH 0 mask bit

Table 8-9.Write All Mask Bit Assignments

#### 8.6.7 Status Register

The status register contains the status of the DMA controller at the time of readout. The status information tells which channel has reached the terminal count and which channel has a DRQ signal pending. Bits 3 through 0 are set every time the corresponding channel reaches the terminal count or when a DMA channel activates the EOP\* signal. Reading or resetting the status register clears the status-register bits. Status register bits 7 through 4 are set when the corresponding DMA channel requests service. Table 8-10 lists the status register bit positions.

Bit/Value	Function
Bit 7	Channel 3 DMA request bit
1	Channel 3 DMA requested
0	No DMA request
Bit 6	Channel 2 DMA request bit
1	Channel 2 DMA requested
0	No DMA request
Bit 5	Channel 1 DMA request bit
1	Channel 1 DMA requested
0	No DMA request
Bit 4	Channel 0 DMA request bit
1	Channel 0 DMA requested
0	No DMA request
Bit 3	Channel 3 terminal-count-reached bit
1	Channel 3 DMA process completed
0	Status register is read or reset
Bit 2	Channel 2 terminal-count-reached bit
1	Channel 2 DMA process completed
0	Status register is read or reset
Bit 1	Channel 1 terminal-count-reached bit
1	Channel 1 DMA process completed
0	Status register is read or reset
Bit 0	Channel 0 terminal-count-reached bit
1	Channel 0 DMA process completed
0	Status register is read or reset

 Table 8-10.
 Status Register Bit Assignments

#### 8.6.8 Temporary Register

The temporary register is used to hold data during memory-to-memory transfers. Following completion of the transfers, the last word moved can be read by the CPU in the program condition. The temporary register always contains the last byte transferred in the previous memory-to-memory operation, unless cleared by a reset.

## 8.6.9 Non-register Program Controls

Special software commands are executed by reading or writing to the addresses specified in the program-control-register I/O. The software commands do not depend on any specific bit pattern on the data bus. For example, accessing the I/O port with a write of any value executes the function. The three software commands are: clear-byte pointer flip-flop, master clear, and clear-request mask register.

Clear-Byte Pointer Flip-flop	This command resets (clears) the byte pointer flip-flop so the next CPU access to the register addresses the least significant byte. This command must be executed before reading or writing new address or word count information.
Master Clear	This command resets the DMA controller and has the same effect as a hardware reset. During a master clear, the command, status, request, temporary, and internal first/last flip/flop registers reset (clear) and the mask register sets. The DMA controller enters the idle condition after a master clear.
Clear-Request Mask Register	This command resets (clears) the mask bits of all four DMA channels.

#### 8.7 PAGE REGISTERS

The system assigns each channel a 4-bit upper-page register and an 8-bit lower-page register (8-bit DMA). The upper- and lower-page registers extend the address space for the 16-bit DMA controller to 28 bits.

Writing to the DMA controller's lower-page register or current-address counter sets the upper-page register to zero, hence, the lower-page register must be programmed before the upper-page register is programmed.

When a secondary requesting agent has control of the bus, it drives address lines 23 through 0, the upper-page register drives its addresses on the bus, and the lower-page register remains disabled. During a refresh cycle, both the upper- and lower-page registers are active only while BUSALE is asserted.

Tables 8-11 and 8-12 list the I/O addresses for the lower- and upper-page registers.

I/O Address	Function (In/Out)
081H	8-bit DMA channel 2 (DACK*2)
082H	8-bit DMA channel 3 (DACK*3)
083H	8-bit DMA channel 1 (DACK*1)
087H	8-bit DMA channel 0 (DACK*0)
089H	16-bit DMA channel 6 (DACK*6)
08AH	16-bit DMA channel 7 (DACK*7)
08BH	16-bit DMA channel 5 (DACK*5)
08FH	Refresh-cycle-page register

#### Table 8-11. Lower-page Register Addresses for Each Channel

I/O Address	Function (In/Out)
481H	8-bit DMA channel 2 (DACK*2)
482H	8-bit DMA channel 3 (DACK*3)
483H	8-bit DMA channel 1 (DACK*1)
487H	8-bit DMA channel 0 (DACK*0)
489H	16-bit DMA channel 6 (DACK*6)
48AH	16-bit DMA channel 7 (DACK*7)
48BH	16-bit DMA channel 5 (DACK*5)
486H 48FH	Refresh-cycle-page register

Table 8-12. Up	pper-page Register	Addresses f	or Each Channel
----------------	--------------------	-------------	-----------------

# 1287 Real-time Clock (RTC)



## 9.1 INTRODUCTION

The board uses a 1287 real-time clock (RTC) module as its real-time clock and configuration memory. The RTC module combines a complete time-of-day clock with alarm, 100-year calendar, a programmable periodic interrupt, 50 bytes of low-power SRAM to store system configuration information, and a battery. System provisions allow the RTC to operate in a low-power mode and protect the contents of both the RAM and clock during system power-up and power-down. The battery maintains clock and calendar information in the RAM. The system does not charge the battery. If the battery fails, the real-time clock chip must be replaced. Figure 9-1 illustrates the RTC memory map. An additional 14 bytes of CMOS RAM is used for the internal clock circuitry.

#### 9.2 RTC RAM I/O OPERATIONS

The RTC maintains the system time and date. The RTC updates the system time at one-second intervals and automatically adjusts at the end of months and leap years.

Writing the appropriate index address to I/O port 70H allows reading and writing to the 64 locations in the RTC. The RTC address register latches the address and points to the specified byte in the RTC.

Values can be written to or read from all 64 bytes except for the following, which are read only:

- Status registers C and D
- High-order bit (bit 7) of status register A
- High-order bit (bit 7) of the seconds register



Figure 9-1. RTC Memory Map

Perform the following two steps when writing data into the RTC/RAM:

- 1. Write the RAM address (data = 00H through 3FH) into I/O port address 70H.
- 2. Write the data byte into I/O port 71H.

Perform the following two steps when reading data from the RTC/RAM:

- Write the RAM address (data = 00H through 3FH) into I/O port address 70H.
- 2. Read the data byte from I/O port 71H.

#### Note

I/O port address 70H is also an output port for the NMI mask. Data bus bit 7 connects to the NMI mask bit and bits 0 through 5 to the RTC/RAM address lines. To protect the RTC from an accidental write to port 71H set 80H to point to status register C or D.

During normal operation, the RTC performs an update cycle every second. Divider bits DV(2:0) and the set bit in register B determine the performance of an update cycle. Divider bits DV(2:0) must be set to a binary value of 010 and the register B set bit must be cleared. During an update, the lower ten registers are not available to the CPU. The update cycle increments the clock/calendar registers and compares them to the alarm registers. An interrupt is issued to the CPU if a match occurs between the two sets of registers (with alarm and interrupt control bits enabled).

## 9.3 RTC ADDRESSABLE LOCATIONS

The 64 addressable locations in the RTC are divided into ten bytes containing the time, calendar, alarm data, four control and status bytes, and 50 general purpose RAM bytes as listed in Table 9-1. Table 9-1 also details the internal register/RAM organization of the RTC.

Function	Index
Time, Calendar, and Alarm Bytes Seconds register Seconds alarm register Minutes register Minutes alarm register Hours register Hours alarm register Day of week register Date of month register Month register Year register	00H 01H 02H 03H 04H 05H 06H 07H 08H 09H
Status Registers Status register A Status register B Status register C Status register D	OAH OBH OCH ODH
General Configuration Bytes Diagnostic status byte Shutdown status byte Floppy disk drive type byte Reserved Fixed disk type byte Reserved Equipment byte Low base memory byte High base memory byte Low expansion memory byte Drive C extended type byte Drive D extended type byte Reserved Features installed byte Drive type 48 parameters byte	0EH 0FH 10H 11H 12H 13H 14H 15H 16H 17H 18H 19H 18H 19H 1AH 1BH-1EH 1FH 20H-27H 28H

 Table 9-1.
 Real-time Clock Address Map

(continued)

Function	Index
Reserved	29H-2DH
2-byte CMOS RAM checksum byte	2EH-2FH
Low extended memory byte	30H
High extended memory byte	31H
Date century byte	32H
Setup information byte	33H
System speed byte	34H
Drive type 49 parameters byte	35H-3CH
Reserved	3DH-3FH

Table 9-1. Real-time Clock Address Map (continued)

#### 9.3.1 Time, Calendar, and Alarm Bytes

The CPU obtains time and calendar information by reading the appropriate locations in the RTC. Writing to these locations initializes the time, calendar, and alarm information. Information stored in these locations is in BCD format.

Before initializing the internal bytes, the set bit in byte B must be set to 1 to prevent RTC updates. Once set, the CPU initializes the first ten locations in BCD format and the set bit is cleared.

Once initialized and enabled, the RTC performs clock/calendar updates at a 1 Hz rate. During updates, the ten bytes of time, calendar, and alarm information are not available to be read or written by the CPU for 2 ms. The update in progress (UIP) bit, in status byte A, is set while an update is occurring.

#### Note

System software sets the real-time clock to BCD data mode.

Table 9-2 lists the format for the clock, calendar, and alarm locations.

Function	Index	BCD Data
Seconds Seconds alarm Minutes Minute alarm Hours	00 01 02 03 04	00:59 00:59 00:59 00:59
(12 hour mode)		01:12 (AM) 81:92 (PM)†
(24 hour mode)		00:23
Hours alarm	05	
(12 hour mode)		01:12 (AM) 81:92 (PM) <sup>†</sup>
(24 hour mode)		00:23
Day of week Date of month Month Year	06 07 08 09	01:07 01:31 01:12 00:99

 Table 9-2.
 Time, Calendar, and Alarm Data Format

 In 12 hour mode the most significant bit of each byte indicates pm when set. For example, 81 BCD (10000001B) indicates 1 pm.

#### Note

The RTC does not affect the 50 bytes of RAM from index address 0EH to 3FH. These bytes are accessible only during the update cycle.

#### 9.4 STATUS REGISTERS

The four control and status bytes (status bytes A through D) control the operation and monitor the status of the RTC. These bytes, located at index addresses 0AH through 0DH, are accessible by the CPU at all times.

#### Note

A setup program must initialize status registers A through D when setting the time and date.

#### 9.4.1 Status Register A

Status register A (index 0AH) contains information on the divider selection bits, the rate selection bits and the update in progress bit. Bits 6-0 are read/write. Bit 7 is read-only. Table 9-3 defines register A.

Bit/Value	Function
Bit 7 1 0	Update in progress (UIP) bit The time update cycle will start soon. The current date and time can be accessed.
Bits 6:4	Divider selection DV(2:0) bits These bits turn the oscillator on and off and reset the countdown chain. When the bits are set to 010, the oscillator is turned on allowing the RTC to keep time. When they are set to X11, the oscillator is enabled and the countdown chain is held in reset. (X = don't care)
Bits 3:0	Rate selection RS(3:0) bits These bits select the divider output frequency. The system initializes to 0110, which selects a 1024 Hz divider frequency and an interrupt rate of 976.562 $\mu$ s.

#### Table 9-3. Status Register A (0AH)

# 9.4.2 Status Register B

Status register B (index 0BH) contains the periodic, alarm, and update-ended interrupt enable bits. The register also contains the set update cycle bit and the square wave enable bits. Table 9-4 defines register B.

Bit/Value	Function
Bit 7 1	Set update cycle (SET) bit Aborts the update cycle in progress. Set to 1 for system initialization.
Bit 6	Enables normal update cycle of one count per second. Periodic interrupt enable (PIE) bit This read/write bit selects an interrupt occurring at the rate specified by the rate and divider selection bits in Status Register A Enables the generation of periodic interrupts Disables the interrupt (default)
Bit 5 1 0	Alarm interrupt enable (AIE) bit Enables the alarm interrupt Disables the alarm interrupt (default)
Bit 4 1 0	Update-ended interrupt enable (UIE) bit Enables the update-ended interrupt Disables the update-ended interrupt (default)
Bit 3 1 0	Square wave enabled (SQWE) bit Enables the square-wave frequency set by the rate selection bits in Status Register A Disables square-wave frequency (default)

Table 9-4. Status Register B (0BH)

(continued)

Bit/Value	Function
Bit 2 1 0	Date mode (DM) bit Indicates whether the time and date calendar updates are in binary or BCD format. Selects the binary format Selects the BCD format (default)
Bit 1 1 0	24/12-hour (24/12) bit Determines the format of the hour-byte, either 12-hour or 24-hour mode. Indicates the 24-hour mode set (default) Indicates the 12-hour mode set
Bit 0 1 0	Daylight savings enabled (DSE) bit Enables daylight savings time Disables daylight savings time (default)

 Table 9-4.
 Status Register B (continued)

# 9.4.3 Status Register C

Status register C (index 0CH) contains the interrupt request, periodic interrupt, alarm interrupt, and update ended interrupt flags. Table 9-5 defines register C.

Bit	Function
Bit 7 1 0	IRQF (interrupt request flag) The condition causing the interrupt is true and the interrupt enable for that condition is true. The condition causing the interrupt is false or the interrupt enable for that condition is false
Bit 6 1 0	PF (periodic interrupt flag) This bit becomes active, independent of the condition of the PIE control bit. The PF bit generates an interrupt and sets IRQF if PIE = 1. A transition, selected by RS(3:0), occurred in the divider chain. The transition did not occur
Bit 5 1 0	AF (alarm interrupt flag) This flag is independent of the condition of the AIE, and generates an interrupt if AIE is true. A match occurred between the time bytes and alarm bytes during an update cycle. No match occurred.
Bit 4 1 0	UF (update ended interrupt flag) This flag is also independent of the condition of the UIE, and generates an interrupt if UIE is true. End of update Update in progress
Bits 3:0	Reserved

Table 9-5.Status Register C (0CH)

## 9.4.4 Status Register D

Status register D (index ODH) contains the valid RAM and time bit. Table 9-6 defines register D.

Bit/Value	Function
Bit 7 1 0	Valid RAM and time (VRT) bit This read-only bit determines the condition of the RTC internal battery. Battery operational A low power sense. A dead battery in the RTC.
Bits 6:0	Reserved

Table 9-6.Status Register D (0DH)

#### 9.5 CONFIGURATION BYTES

The remaining bytes in RTC address space are for general configuration and status. The rest of the chapter discusses these general configuration and status bytes.
#### 9.5.1 Diagnostic Status Byte

The diagnostic status byte (index 0EH) contains the RTC battery power status, checksum status indicator, incorrect configuration information, and the memory size comparison. Table 9-7 defines the byte usage.

Bit/Value	Function
Bit 7 1 0	Real-time clock chip battery power status Battery is dead or was found dead in the power-on self-test (steady bit) Battery is operational
Bit 6 1 0	Configuration record — checksum status indicator Checksum not valid Checksum valid
Bit 5 1 0	Incorrect configuration information Checks the equipment byte of the configuration record when the system powers up Configuration information not valid Configuration information valid
Bit 4 1 0	Memory size comparison Memory size different from configuration record Memory size the same as configuration record
Bit 3 1 0	Initial state of drive C or fixed disk controller Wrong controller or drive C. System cannot boot from drive C. Correct controller and drive. The system can boot from drive C.
Bit 2 1 0	Time status indicator (post checks) Time not valid Time valid
Bits 1:0	Reserved

Table 9-7.Diagnostic Status Byte (0EH)

#### Note

In order for the configuration information to be valid, power-on check requires at least one floppy disk drive to be installed (bit 0 of the equipment byte set to 1) and the video display jumper to match with the display controller installed.

#### 9.5.2 Shutdown Status Byte

When the CPU resets, the shutdown status byte (index 0FH) is set. The reset code identifies the type of reset and signals the system what to do after the reset. It also provides a method of resetting the system without losing previously stored data or returning the system to the real mode from protected mode. Table 9-8 defines the byte usage.

Value	Function
00H	System reset or power up
09H	User software reset (return from protected mode)
01H:08H	Used by hardware self-test
0AH:FFH	Reserved

Table 9-8.	Shutdown	Status	Byte (0FH)
------------	----------	--------	------------

### 9.5.3 Floppy Disk Drive Type Byte

The floppy disk drive type byte (index 10H) contains data indicating the floppy disk drive types installed. Table 9-9 defines the byte usage.

Bit/Value	Function
Bits 7:4	First floppy disk drive type
0000	No floppy disk drive
0001	360K drive (5.25-inch)
0010	1.2M high-density drive (5.25-inch)
0011	720K (3.5-inch drive)
0100	1.4M (3.5-inch drive)
0101:1111	Reserved
Bits 3:0	Second floppy disk drive type
0000	No floppy disk drive
0001	360K drive (5.25-inch)
0010	1.2M high-density drive (5.25-inch)
0011	720K (3.5-inch drive)
0100	1.4M (3.5-inch drive)
0101:1111	Reserved

Table 9-9.Floppy Disk Drive Type Byte (10H)

#### 9.5.4 Fixed Disk Drive Type Byte

The fixed disk drive type byte (index 12H) contains data indicating the fixed disk drive types installed. Table 9-10 defines the byte usage.

Bit/Value	Function
Bits 7:4	First fixed disk drive type (drive C)
0000	No fixed disk drive installed
0001:1110	Types 1 - 14
1111	Types 16 - 255 (refer to extended byte 19H)
Bits 3:0	Second fixed disk drive type (drive D)
0000	No fixed disk drive installed
0001:1110	Types 1 - 14
1111	Types 16 - 255 (refer to extended byte 1AH)

Table 9-10. Fixed Disk Type Byte (12H)

#### 9.5.5 Equipment Byte

The equipment byte (index 14H) contains equipment information for use by the power-on self test (POST). Table 9-11 shows how the byte is used.

Bit/Value	Function
Bit 7:6	Number of floppy disk drives installed
00	1 drive
01	2 drives
10	Reserved
11	Reserved
Bits 5:4	Type of video display controller used
00	Extended functionality controller (EGA, VGA, PGA).
01	Color graphic video display controller in the 40-column
	mode.
10	Color graphic video display controller in the 80-column
	mode.
11	Monochrome display controller.
Bits 3:2	Reserved
Bit 1	Presence of a numeric coprocessor
1	•
0	No numeric coprocessor
Bit 0	Presence of floopy disk drive
1	
0	
Bits 3:2 Bit 1 1 0 Bit 0 1	Monochrome display controller. Reserved Presence of a numeric coprocessor Numeric coprocessor installed

Table 9-11. Equipment Byte (14H)

#### 9.5.6 Low and High Base Memory Bytes

Low and high base memory bytes (index 15H and 16H) contain the low and high bytes of the base memory size, respectively. These two bytes indicate the base memory size. Table 9-12 defines the byte usage.

Table 9-12. Low and High Base Memory Byte (15H and 16H)

Value	Typical Values	
0100H	256K RAM	
0200H	512K RAM	
0280H	640K RAM	

#### 9.5.7 Low and High Memory Expansion Bytes

Low and high memory expansion byte (index 17H and 18H) form a 16-bit value that indicates the total amount of expansion memory (above 1M) set by the system configuration program. Byte index 17H contains the low byte and byte index 18H contains the high byte. Table 9-13 defines byte usage.

 Table 9-13.
 Low and High Memory Expansion Bytes (17H and 18H)

Value	Typical Values
0200H	512K RAM expansion
0400H	1024K RAM expansion
0600H	1536K RAM expansion
3C00H	15360K RAM expansion

#### 9.5.8 Drive C Extended Byte

Drive C extended byte (index 19H) contains the drive C extended type byte indicating drive type. Values from 10H to FFH indicate drive types 16 to 255, respectively. All other values for this byte are reserved.

#### 9.5.9 Drive D Extended Byte

Drive D extended byte (index 1AH) contains the drive D extended type byte indicating drive type. Values from 10H to FFH indicate drive types 16 to 255, respectively. All other values of byte 1AH are reserved.

#### 9.5.10 Feature Installed Byte

The feature installed byte (index 1FH) contains the bits to indicate what features are installed. Table 9-14 defines byte usage.

Bit	Function
Bit 7:3	Reserved
Bit 2	Floppy disk drive A installed
Bit 1	Video display installed
Bit 0	Keyboard BIOS installed

Table 9-14. Feature Installed Byte (1FH)

#### 9.5.11 Fixed Disk Type 48 Parameters

The fixed disk type 48 parameters (index 20H-27H) are eight bytes that contain information about various disk use and operating parameters. Table 9-15 lists the bytes and their index values.

Index	Byte
20H	Cylinder low byte
21H	Cylinder high byte
22H	Number of heads
23H	Write pre-compensation start cylinder low byte
24H	Write pre-compensation start cylinder high byte
25H	Landing zone cylinder low byte
26H	Landing zone cylinder high byte
27H	Sectors per track.

 Table 9-15.
 Fixed Disk Type 48 Parameters (20H:27H)

#### 9.5.12 Shadow and Setup Byte

Shadow and setup byte (index 28H) contains the enable and disable bits for the options in the setup program. Table 9-16 defines byte usage.

Bit	Function
Bit 7 Bit 6 Bit 5 Bit 4 Bit 3 Bit 2 Bit 1	<ul> <li>1 = Cache disabled</li> <li>1 = Above 16M disabled</li> <li>1 = Speaker off</li> <li>1 = 640K enabled</li> <li>1 = Enter setup at pre-boot only</li> <li>1 = AT32 I/O enabled</li> <li>1 = Video shadow disabled</li> </ul>
Bit 0	1 = BIOS shadow disabled

Table 9-16.Shadow and Setup Byte (28H)

#### Note

Video BIOS, alone, cannot be shadowed. It must be shadowed with system BIOS. Video BIOS shadowing can be disabled separately. If the system BIOS shadow is disabled, the video BIOS shadow must also be disabled. Both video BIOS shadow and system BIOS shadow are disabled when the corresponding bits are set.

#### 9.5.13 CMOS RAM Checksum

The CMOS RAM checksum byte (index 2EH-2FH) contains the sum of the values from addresses 10H through 2DH. Byte index 2EH contains the checksum high byte and byte index 2FH contains the checksum low byte.

#### 9.5.14 Low and High Extended Memory Byte

The low and high extended memory bytes (index 30H and 31H) represent the total extended memory (above 1M) determined during system power-up. System interrupt 15H determines extended memory size. Byte index 30H contains the low byte of the extended memory size and byte index 31H contains the high byte. Table 9-17 defines the byte usage.

 Table 9-17.
 Low and High Extended Memory Bytes (30H and 31H)

Value	Typical Values
0200H	512K RAM extended
0400H	1024K RAM extended
0600H	1536K RAM extended
3C00H	15360K RAM extended

#### 9.5.15 Date Century Byte

The date century byte (index 32H) is the century part of the current date encoded in BCD format. The BIOS sets and reads this byte.

#### 9.5.16 Setup Information Byte

The setup information byte (index 33H) contains information on the setup program. Table 9-18 defines the byte usage.

Bit	Function
Bit 7	128K ROM expansion
Bit 6	Enable user message after initial setup
Bit 5	Reserved
Bit 4	Copy of 386 CR0 ET bit
Bits 3:0	Reserved

Table 9-18.Setup Information Byte (33H)

#### 9.5.17 CPU Speed Byte

CPU speed byte (index 34H) contains information on the CPU speed. Table 9-19 defines the byte usage.

Table 9-19. C	PU Speed	Byte (34H)	
---------------	----------	------------	--

Bit	Function
Bit 7:3	Reserved
Bit 2:0	CPU speed

#### 9.5.18 Fixed Disk Type 49 Parameters

The fixed disk type 49 parameters (index 35H-3CH) are eight bytes that contain information about various disk use and operating parameters. Table 9-20 lists the bytes and their index.

Index	Byte
35H	Cylinder low byte
36H	Cylinder high byte
37H	Number of heads
38H	Write pre-compensation start cylinder low byte
39H	Write pre-compensation start cylinder high byte
3AH	Landing zone cylinder low byte
3BH	Landing zone cylinder high byte
3CH	Sectors per track

Table 9-20. Fixed Disk Type 49 Parameters (35H:3CH)

### **Communication Ports**

# 10

### 10.1 INTRODUCTION

The 302 board contains two RS-232C serial communication ports and one parallel printer port. This chapter provides reference data about the ports, including port addresses and interrupt levels.

#### 10.2 SERIAL COMMUNICATION PORTS

The 302 board provides two RS-232-C serial communication ports (COM1 and COM2). Each port is implemented by an 82510 serial communication controller. Two 82510 asynchronous serial controllers provide interfacing between the communication ports and the CPU. Refer to Table 10-1 for selection of port addresses and interrupt levels.

Port	Address	Interrupt
COM1	3F8H-3FFH	IRQ4
COM2	2F8H-2FFH	IRQ3

#### Table 10-1. Selection of Addresses and Interrupt Levels

#### 10.2.1 CPU Interfacing

Two 82510 controllers provide the interfacing between the communication ports and the CPU. The 82510 is a demultiplexed bus interface using a bidirectional, buffered, 8-bit data bus and a 3-bit address bus. Thirty-five registers, divided into four banks, control and configure the 82510 controllers.

#### 10.2.2 Connectors and Pinouts

Headers J5 and J6 on the 302 board are  $2 \times 13$  (26-pin) headers supplying the serial communication channels. A ribbon cable maps J5 to two DB9 connectors (serial connector 1 and serial connector 2). J6 is a header for the optional serial connector 1. Another ribbon cable maps J6 to a DB25 connector. Appendix H list the pinouts for J5 and J6.

#### **10.3 PARALLEL PRINTER PORT**

The 302 board provides a Centronics-compatible parallel printer port. The port can be designated as either Port 1 or Port 2 (LPT1 or LPT2). Two sets of onboard jumper pins are used to set up this port. The jumpers select the leading or trailing edge of the Printer Acknowledge signal and enable interrupt generation. Discrete logic provides interfacing between the parallel printer port and the printer. Table 10-2 shows the port address and interrupt request levels for the two ports.

Port	Address	Interrupt
LPT1	0378H-037FH	IRQ7
LPT2	0278H-027FH	IRQ5

 Table 10-2.
 Port Address and Interrupt Levels

#### 10.3.1 Programming

The 302 board uses the read, write, status, and control signal registers to transmit data and status to and from the printer. System software performs all printer controls. Tables 10-3 and 10-4 list input and output instruction information.

Table 10-3.	Input Instructions
-------------	--------------------

Input Instruction	Port LPT1	Port LPT2
Data Read	0378H	0278H
Status Read	0379H	0279H
Control Signal Read	037AH	027AH

Output Instruction	Address Port 1	Address Port 2	Function	Data
Write Data	0378H	0278H	Character to print	As desired
Write Control	037AH	027AH	STROBE	Set bit 0=1 Reset bit 0=0
			AUTO FEED	Set bit 1=1 Reset bit 1=0
			INITIALIZE	Set bit 2=1 Reset bit 2=0
			SLCTIN	Set bit 3=1 Reset bit 3=0
			Enable int	Set bit 4=1 Reset bit 4=0

Table 10-4. Output Instructions

Tables 10-5 and 10-6 list the parallel port registers.

Table 10-5. Parallel Port Registers (Bits 7-4)

REGISTER	BIT7	BIT6	BIT5	BIT4
Read port	PD7	PD6	PD5	PD4
Read status	BUSY	ACK	PE	SELECT
Read control	1	1	1	IRQ ENB
Write port	PD7	PD6	PD5	PD4
Write control	1	1	1	IRQ ENB

REGISTER	BIT3	BIT2	BIT1	BITO
Read port	PD3	PD2	PD1	PD0
Read status	ERROR	1	1	1
Read control	SELECT	INT	AUTOFEED	STROBE
Write port	PD3	PD2	PD1	PD0
Write control	SELECT	INIT	AUTOFEED	STROBE

 Table 10-6.
 Parallel Port Registers (Bits 3-0)

#### 10.3.2 Connector and Pinouts

J4 is a 2 x 13 (26-pin) header connected to a DB25 connector. Refer to Appendix E for pinout information on the parallel printer connector.

### **Keyboard Controller**

## 11

#### 11.1 INTRODUCTION

The board supports a 101- or 102-key enhanced keyboard. The keyboard is controlled by the 8742 single-chip microcomputer. This chapter describes the keyboard interface on the 302 board (see Figure 11-1.)

### 11.2 KEYBOARD CONTROLLER SYSTEM INTERFACE

The keyboard controller communicates with the system through a status register, an output buffer, and an input buffer. The status register is an 8-bit read-only register at I/O address 64H. The output buffer is read only and at I/O address 60H. The input buffer consists of data write at I/O address 60H and command write at I/O address 64H.



Figure 11-1. Keyboard Controller

~

#### 11.2.1 Status Register

The status register contains information about the state of the controller and keyboard interface. Table 11-1 lists the status register bit assignments.

Bit/Value	Function
Bit 7 1 0	Parity error This bit indicates whether the last byte of data received from the keyboard had odd or even parity. In normal operation, the byte sent by the keyboard should have odd parity. Even parity (error) Odd parity (no error)
Bit 6 1 0	Receive time-out This bit indicates whether the data reception from the keyboard terminated normally within the programmed receive time-out delay or not. Did not terminate within time-out delay Terminated within time-out delay
Bit 5 1 0	Transmit time-out This bit indicates whether the keyboard controller transmission terminated normally within the specified time or not. Did not terminate within the specified time. Terminated within the specified time
Bit 4 1 0	Front panel keylock status Keyboard not inhibited Keyboard inhibited

 Table 11-1.
 Status Register Bit Assignments

(continued)

Bit/Value	Function
Bit 3 1 0	Command/Data Status in Input Buffer A command byte was written (via port 64H) A data byte was written (via port 60H)
Bit 2 1 0	System flag Self-test was successful Power-on reset occurred
Bit 1 1 0	Input Buffer Full A write to either 60H or 64H sets this bit to 1. This bit is set to 0 when the keyboard controller reads the buffer. Data from the CPU in the input buffer No data from the CPU in the input buffer
Bit 0 1 0	Output Buffer Full This bit is set to 0 when the CPU reads the buffer (DBBIN). The keyboard controller has loaded the output buffer with data No data from the keyboard in the output buffer (DBBOUT)

 Table 11-1.
 Status Register Bit Assignments (continued)

#### 11.2.2 Output Buffer

The controller output buffer is an 8-bit read-only register at I/O address 60H. The controller sends keyboard scan codes and command-requested data bytes to the system via the output buffer. The significant data in the output buffer can be read only when bit 0 of the status register is 1.

#### 11.2.3 Input Buffer

The keyboard controller input buffer is an 8-bit write-only register at I/O addresses 60H or 64H. The input buffer is used to receive data from the system. Data can be written to the input buffer only if bit 1 of the status register is 0. Full output buffers should always be serviced first.

Writing to address 60H clears the command/data bit (bit 3) of the status register. Once bit 3 clears, the controller processes the data in the input buffer as a data byte. Data written to address 60H is sent to the keyboard unless a system command instructs the controller to wait for control data.

Writing to address 64H sets the command/data bit (bit 3) of the status register to 1. Once bit 3 is set, the controller processes the data in the input buffer as a command byte.

#### 11.2.4 Input and Output Ports

The input port consists of four signals: two signals driven to the controller by the keyboard, and two signals indicating the keylock state and color/monochrome bit setting. The output port consists of seven signals driven by the controller to the keyboard. These ports are accessed by sending the appropriate read or write command to the controller. Tables 11-2 and 11-3 list the input and output port bit assignments respectively.

Bit	Function
7	Keylock (lock = $0$ )
6	Color/mono ( $color = 0$ )
5	MFG TEST (enabled $=$ 0)
4:1	Reserved
0	Keyboard data in

Table 11-2. Input Port Bit Assignments

Bit	Function
7	Keyboard data out
6	Keyboard clock out
5	Reserved
4	IRQ01 (keyboard interrupt)
3	Reserved
2	Deturbo (slow down)
1	Gate address line 20
0	Reset CPU (software reset)

Table 11-3. **Output Port Bit Assignments** 

#### **CONTROLLER COMMANDS** 11.3

The CPU uses controller commands to govern the operation of the keyboard controller and sense its status. The CPU writes controller commands into the input buffer through I/O address 64H. Keyboard controller commands are listed in Table 11-4 and described individually on the following pages.

Table 11-4.   Controller Commands		
Code	Description	
20H:3FH	Read keyboard controller command byte	
60H:7FH	Write keyboard controller command byte	
AAH	Self-test	
ABH	Test interface	
ACH	NO-OP	
ADH	Disable keyboard	
AEH	Enable keyboard	
СОН	Read input port	
DOH	Read output port	
D1H	Write output port	
EOH	Read test input port	
E1H:EFH	Reserved	
FOH:FFH	Output pulse	

#### 11.4 KEYBOARD INTERFACE

The keyboard connects to the controller through a bidirectional-synchronous serial interface cable with a 5-pin DIN connector (J9). The controller supplies the keyboard with DC power of  $+5V \pm 10\%$  at a maximum 300 mA of current. Some keyboards require the system to send a RESET signal to the keyboard when a system reset occurs. This ensures the keyboard buffers are cleared. See Appendix H for the keyboard connector pinout.

The controller and the keyboard communicate using data and clock lines for synchronous serial communication. Open-collector drivers, at both ends of the cable, drive the data and clock lines.

At power-up, the keyboard scans the signals on the clock and data lines and establishes a line protocol. A bidirectional serial interface in the keyboard converts the clock and data signals and transfers them to and from the keyboard through the keyboard cable. Signals include keyboard control commands from the controller and keyboard scan and acknowledgment codes transferred to the controller.

The serial data from the keyboard is called a scan code. Each keyboard key has an associated 11-bit scan code. Pressing and releasing a key generates a make or break scan code. The keyboard detects all keys pressed and transfers each scan code in the correct sequence to the controller.

The controller receives serial data from the keyboard, checks the parity of the data, and translates the 8-bit scan code into system codes. It also interrupts the CPU to transfer data to the system. The controller interrupts the system when data is placed in its output buffer, or waits for the system to poll its status register to determine when data is available.

The controller sends various commands to the keyboard at any time. When the controller sends data to the keyboard, it sets the data line to an inactive state and allows the clock line to go to an active state. This action serves as both a request-to-send (RTS) and a start bit. If the clock line is set to an inactive state, keyboard transmission is inhibited.

If the controller has to send data to the keyboard when the keyboard is transmitting to the controller, the controller first clamps the clock signal line to request a keyboard transmission halt. This clock line must remain low for at least 60 ms to ensure that the keyboard recognizes the controller request.

During the basic assurance test (BAT) or when no data transmission is occurring, the clock line is at an active (high) state. The data line is held at the active (high) state by the keyboard.

A signal at an inactive (low) state has a value between 0V and +0.7V (logical 0). A logical 1 is an active signal with a value between +2.4V and +5.5V. These voltages are measured between a signal source and the DC network ground.

#### 11.4.1 Keyboard Data Stream

The 11-bit data stream (scan code), transferred serially over the data line, consists of one start bit, eight data bits, one odd parity bit, and one stop bit. A logical 1 indicates an active level and a logical 0 an inactive level. The 8 data bits plus the parity bit always have an odd number of 1's. Bit 1 of the Data Stream bits is the first bit transmitted. Table 11-5 lists the functions of the Data Stream bits.

Bit	Function
1	Start bit (always 0)
2	Data bit 0 (LSB)
3	Data bit 1
4	Data bit 2
5	Data bit 3
6	Data bit 4
7	Data bit 5
8	Data bit 6
9	Data bit 7 (MSB)
10	Parity bit (odd parity)
11	Stop bit (always 1)

Table 11-5. Data Stream Bits

#### 11.4.2 Receiving Data from the Keyboard

The keyboard transfers data to the controller in a serial format using an 11-bit frame. The first bit is a start bit, followed by 8 data bits, an odd parity bit, and a stop bit. A clock, supplied by the keyboard, synchronizes the data transfer.

Before transferring data, the keyboard checks for a transmission inhibit or controller RTS status on the clock and data lines. If transmission is inhibited (clock line inactive), keycodes are transferred to the keyboard buffer. During controller RTS status, data is also stored in the buffer while the keyboard receives system data.

The keyboard transfers keycodes to the controller only when both the clock and data signals are active. At the end of a transfer, the controller disables the interface until the system accepts the data byte.

If a parity check error occurs, the controller signals the keyboard to transfer the data again. If the controller does not receive the data correctly after a number of retries, an FFH code is sent to the output buffer. The parity bit in the status register is also set to 1 indicating a receive parity error.

The controller times each data byte transfer from the keyboard. If a keyboard transfer does not end within 2 ms, the receive time-out bit in the status register is set. An FFH code is sent to the keyboard controller output buffer. No retries are attempted on a receive time-out error.

The following commands are sent from the keyboard to the controller.

Overrun or Key Detection Error (00 or FFH) If the keyboard is using scan code set 1, the code is FFH. For sets 2 and 3, the code is 00H. The overrun or key detection error condition are:

- The keyboard sends a key detection error character if conditions in the keyboard make it impossible to identify a switch closure.
- When the buffer in the keyboard is full, an overrun character replaces the last transmitted code in the buffer. This code is sent to the controller when it reaches the top of the buffer queue.

- Keyboard ID (83ABH) The keyboard ID consists of two bytes, 83ABH. The keyboard controller responds to the read ID command with ACK, discontinues scanning, and sends the two ID bytes. The low byte is sent first followed by the high byte. Following output of the keyboard ID, the keyboard controller resumes scanning.
- BAT Completion Code Each time the system is powered on or POST is run, the (AAH) Each time the system is powered on or POST is run, the keyboard performs a self-test operation called the BAT. The BAT consists of a keyboard processor test, a checksum of the ROM, and a RAM test. Activity on the clock and data lines is ignored during a BAT. The AAH command is sent to the controller following satisfactory completion of the BAT. Any other code indicates a keyboard failure.
- BAT Failure Code If a BAT failure occurs, the keyboard sends FCH, (FCH) discontinues scanning, and waits for a controller response and reset.
- Echo (EEH) When the controller issues the Echo command to the keyboard, the keyboard sends EEH as a response.
- Acknowledge (FAH) The keyboard issues ACK to any valid input other than an Echo and a Resend command. If the keyboard is interrupted while sending ACK, it discards ACK and responds to the new commands.
- Resend (FEH) The keyboard sends this command when it receives invalid input or any input with incorrect parity. This command signals the controller to send the input again. If the controller sends nothing to the keyboard, no response is required.

#### 11.4.3 Sending Data to the Keyboard

The controller sends data to the keyboard in the same serial format that it uses to receive data from the keyboard. Before the controller sends data to the keyboard, it checks the keyboard and determines whether the keyboard is transferring data. If the keyboard is transferring data, but has not reached the tenth clock signal, the controller overrides the keyboard output by asserting the keyboard clock signal. If the keyboard transfer is beyond the tenth clock signal, the controller waits until the keyboard completes its transmission before sending data.

If the controller overrides the keyboard output, or if the keyboard is not sending data, the controller sets the clock line inactive for more than 60  $\mu$ s while preparing to send data. When the controller sends the start bit, the clock signal is asserted.

Each controller command or data transmission to the keyboard requires a response before the controller sends its next output. After the keyboard receives a controller command, it returns an ACK code to the controller. If the keyboard response is invalid or has a parity error, FEH is placed in the controller output buffer and the transmit time-out or parity error bits are set to 1 in the status register.

The controller sets a programmed time limit (20 to 25 ms) for the keyboard to respond. If the keyboard cannot complete the send-out data process within this time period, the controller places FEH in its output buffer and sets the transmit and receive time-out error bits to 1 in its status register. No retries are attempted by the controller for any transmission error. The following commands are sent from the controller to the keyboard.

This command is used as a diagnostic aid to test the Echo (EEH) keyboard command process. When the keyboard receives this command, it issues an EEH response and continues scanning. Invalid Commands EFH and F1H are invalid commands and are not (EFH and F1H) supported. If EFH or F1H is sent, the keyboard does not acknowledge the command. Instead, it returns a Resend command and continues in its prior scanning state. No other activities occur. Select Alternate Scan This command instructs the keyboard to select one of Codes (F0H) three sets of scan codes. The keyboard acknowledges receipt of this command with the ACK signal, then clears both the output buffer and the typematic key (if one is active). When the controller sends the option byte, the keyboard responds with another ACK signal. An option byte value of 01H selects scan code set 1, 02H selects set 2, and 03H selects set 3. The byte value 00H causes the keyboard to respond with the ACK signal and send a byte, thereby signaling the controller which scan code set is in use. Read ID (F2H) This command requests identification information from the keyboard. The keyboard responds with the ACK signal, discontinues scanning, and sends the two keyboard ID bytes. The second byte must follow completion of the first byte within 500  $\mu$ s. After the output of the second ID byte, the keyboard resumes

scanning.

Set Typematic Rate/Delay (F3H)	This command sets the typematic rate and delay. The keyboard responds with the ACK signal, stops scanning, and waits for the controller to issue the rate/delay value byte. Once issued, the keyboard responds with another ACK signal, sets the rate and delay to the values indicated, and resumes scanning.
	The contents of the rate/delay value byte following the command determine the parameters for these two functions. Bits 4:0 set the typematic rate, bits 5 and 6 set the delay parameter, and bit 7 is set to 0. The following equations show the calculation for the delay parameters and the typematic rate:
	• Delay = $(1 + C) \times 250 \text{ ms} \pm 20\%$
	• Period T = $(8 + A) \times 2^B \times 0.00417$ seconds
	• Typematic Rate = $1/T \pm 20\%$ (default is 10 characters per second)
	<ul> <li>Where: C = Binary value of bits 6 and 5 (default is 500 ms)</li> <li>A = Binary value of bits 2, 1, and 0</li> <li>B = Binary value of bits 4 and 3</li> <li>T = Interval from one typematic output to the next</li> </ul>
Enable (F4H)	When the keyboard receives this command, it responds with the ACK signal, clears its output buffer, clears the last typematic key, and starts scanning.
Default Disable (F5H)	This command resets all conditions to the power-on default state. The keyboard responds with the ACK signal, clears its output buffer, sets the default key types and typematic rate/delay, and clears the last typematic key. The keyboard stops scanning and waits for further instructions from the controller.

Set Default (F6H)	This command is similar to the default disable command F5H. However, the keyboard continues scanning instead of stopping and waiting for further instructions.
Set All Keys (F7H, F8H, F9H, and FAH)	Commands F7H, F8H, F9H, and FAH instruct the keyboard to set all keys to typematic, make/break, make, and typematic/make/break, respectively. The keyboard responds with the ACK signal, clears its output buffer, sets all keys to the type indicated by the command, and continues scanning. Although these commands are sent using any scan-code set, they affect only scan-code set 3.
Set Key Type (FBH, FCH, and FDH)	Commands FBH, FCH, and FDH instruct the keyboard to set individual keys to typematic, make/break, and make respectively. The keyboard responds with the ACK signal, clears its output buffer, and prepares to receive key identification. The controller identifies each key by its scan-code value as defined in scan code set 3. Only scan-code set 3 values are valid for key identification. The type of each identified key is determined by the value indicated by the command.
Resend (FEH)	The controller transmits this command when it detects an error in any transfer from the keyboard. The controller requests the keyboard to retransmit the code that was detected as an error. This command is only transmitted after a keyboard transfer and before the controller allows the next keyboard output. When a resend command is received, the keyboard transfers the previous output again. If the previous output was Resend, the keyboard transfers the last byte before the Resend command.

Reset (FFH) The controller issues this command to start a program reset and a keyboard internal self-test. The keyboard responds with the ACK signal and ensures the controller accepts the ACK signal before executing the command. The controller signals acceptance of ACK by raising the clock and data lines for at least  $500 \,\mu$ s. The keyboard remains disabled from the time it receives the reset command until ACK is accepted, or until another command is sent that overrides the previous command. Following the acceptance of the ACK signal, the keyboard is reinitialized and performs the BAT. After returning the completion code, the keyboard defaults to scan-code set 2.

#### 11.5 KEYCLICK VOLUME

The keyclick volume feature controls the eight volume levels of the keyboard. When a key is pressed, the 302 board emits a clicking sound, giving audio feedback for controller keyboards with little or no audio or tactile feedback. Holding down the cm and keys then pressing the + key, on the numeric keypad, increases the volume to the next highest level. If the volume is at the highest level, pressing the key sequence decreases the volume to the lowest level. At power-up, the volume is set to the second-lowest level.

## **302 Board Special Interfaces**

## 12

### 12.1 INTRODUCTION

This chapter discusses three special interfaces: the keylock interface, the speaker interface, and the reset interface.

#### 12.2 KEYLOCK INTERFACE

The keylock interface can be used with a key-activated switch to electrically lock out the keyboard. The keylock interfaces with part of connector J23 on the 302 board. Table 12-1 lists the keylock interface pinout.

Signal/Function	Pin
+ 5V	13
Not connected	14
Ground	15
KEYLOCK*	16
Ground	17
#### 12.3 SPEAKER INTERFACE

A 75477 high current analog driver provides audible tone generation for the speaker. The 75477 uses an OSC signal derived from a counter on the 8254 programmable interval timer (PIT) module to drive the SPKOUT signal. The OSC signal is gated on and off by bit 0 (ENABLE SPEAKER) of port 61H. Bit 1 (SPEAKER DATA) supplies the data for sounding the speaker. Port 79H, bit 6 is an additional speaker enable signal to enable the 75477 to drive the speaker. Part of the header (J23) provides the connection between the speaker and the system. Table 12-2 lists the speaker interface pinout.

Signal/Function	Pin
SPKOUT speaker drive out	8
Key (pin missing)	9
Ground	10
+5V	11

 Table 12-2.
 J23 Speaker Header Pinout

#### 12.4 **RESET INTERFACE**

There are several ways in which to reset the 302 board: hardware, software, and keyboard.

Systems with a front panel reset feature will force a hard reset by activating the reset switch. The interface to this function is through J23 on the 302 board. Table 12-3 lists the pin definitions for J23. This reset will cause the hardware of the entire 302 board to re-initialize.

Table 12-3.	J23 Reset Interface Pinouts
-------------	-----------------------------

Signal/Function	Pin
Ground	5
FPRESET*	6

The function of a software reset is to force a reset of the CPU only. No other hardware including the 387 numeric coprocessor is effected. This is a function of the 8742 microcontroller provided by the keyboard interface. Bit 0 of the keyboard controller output port is toggled via the pulse output port command. See Chapter 11 for details on the keyboard controller.

A keyboard reset is initiated by holding down the [Ctrl], [Att], and [Delete] keys on the keyboard at the same time. The effect of this function is to cause the CPU to go to the address specified by the reset vector. This type of reset does not directly effect any hardware.

## Power-on Self Test and Setup

13

#### 13.1 INTRODUCTION

This chapter describes the power-on self test (POST), which executes automatically each time a 302 system is booted, and the setup program. Both the POST and the setup program are stored in ROM on the 302 board. This chapter assumes that the 302 board has been correctly integrated into a computer system environment with all necessary I/O devices connected, peripheral devices installed, and configuration performed.

#### 13.2 POWER-ON SELF TEST

Each time the 302 system is turned on or reset, the POST runs automatically and checks the CPU, keyboard, video display, memory, and most peripheral devices.

During the POST memory test, the amount of memory being tested is displayed on the screen. Depending on the amount of extended memory installed, the POST memory test takes 3 to 15 seconds to complete.

During a soft boot, the system executes all POST tests except memory.

When POST completes the system beeps once, if no configuration errors are detected, and displays a message similar to the following :

Phoenix 80386 ROM BIOS PLUS Version x.xx yy.yy Copyright (C) 1985-1988 Phoenix Technologies Ltd. All Rights Reserved If configuration errors are detected, the system beeps twice and displays a message similar to the following:

```
640K Base Memory, 01024K Extended
Invalid configuration information - please run SETUP program
Strike the F1 key to continue, F2 to run the setup utility
```

#### ■> Note

It is normal for this message to appear the first time you start the system.

If you press the F1 key to continue, the system will operate, but will not be correctly configured.

#### 13.3 SETUP PROGRAM OVERVIEW

The setup program, located in ROM BIOS on the board, enables you to check or change the system configuration information.

The setup program does not require you to see a particular operating system or special diskette to change system configuration values. Values changed through the setup program are effective when the system is rebooted.

You can check or change the following configuration values using the setup program:

- Date and time
- Number and type of floppy disk drives and fixed disk drives
- Amount of base memory and extended memory
- Availability and type of primary monitor controller
- Availability of keyboard
- Availability of math coprocessor
- Shadow or do not shadow system BIOS and video BIOS

- Enable or disable cache memory
- Enable or disable AT32 I/O
- Enable or disable access to memory above 16M
- Enable or disable the speaker
- Enable or disable post-boot setup
- Enable or disable system memory at 512K-640K

When the system boots, the POST checks the stored setup information against the hardware configuration. If the data does not agree, the POST displays an invalid configuration message. If such a message appears, you can run setup to enter the correct configuration parameters.

- Displays date, time, and current values for system options.
- Allows you to accept current (default) values or enter different values for time, date, and system options.
- Provides instructions on booting the system so new settings take effect.

#### 13.4 **RUNNING THE SETUP PROGRAM**

Because the setup program is permanently stored in ROM, it can be run at any time.

To run setup, wait for POST to complete (you'll hear a short beep), then immediately press  $\boxed{Ctrl} + \boxed{Att} + \boxed{Ims}$ .

A display similar to Figure 13-1 will appear. The actual display you will see depends on the specific configuration of your system.

```
Phoenix Technologies Ltd. Version
System Configuration Setup x.xx yy
Time: 08:20:20
Date: Fri Jan 29, 1990
Diskette A:
                   3.5 Inch, 1.4 MB
Diskette B:
                   5.25 Inch, 1.2 MB
                                               Hd
                                                                              Size
                                        Cy1
                                                      Pre Lz
                                                                     Sec
Hard Disk C:
                   Type 44
                                 820
                                        6
                                                -1
                                                      820 17
                                                                     40
Hard Disk D:
                   Not Installed
Base Memory:
                   640 KB
Extended Memory:
                   1024 KB
Display:
                   VGA/EGA
Keyboard:
                   Installed
CPU speed:
                   Turbo
                   Not Installed
Coprocessor:
PgUp for advanced options. Up/Down Arrow to select. Left/Right Arrow to change entries.
F1 for help. F10 to exit and save changes.
Esc to reboot for changes to take effect.
```

#### Figure 13-1. Typical Setup Screen 1

To change an option, use the  $\overline{\blacksquare}$  or  $\overline{\blacksquare}$  key to move the cursor to the option you want to change. The cursor will move only to options that you can change.

To change the base memory and extended memory, enter the correct numeric values. If you enter an incorrect number, you can correct the entry by using the Backspace key. To change other options, press the r or r key to display the possible options. Each time you press a key, a new value is displayed.

When you finish setting options, exit setup by pressing Fig or Esc. You can exit setup from either screen.

Press Fig to exit the setup program without booting the system. Changes are saved, but only the date and time information take effect. The other changes take effect when the system boots. Press Esc to save the setup changes and boot the system.

#### 13.4.1 Moving Through Setup Screen 1

Make sure the first setup screen is displayed (refer to Figure 13-1. Setup Screen 1). If it is not, press Page Up.

#### SETTING SYSTEM TIME

The time option contains three fields: hours, minutes, and seconds. You can change the hours and minutes fields to specific values. You can reset the seconds field to 00.

To set the correct time, press the  $\boxdot$  or  $\boxdot$  key. Press the  $\boxdot$  key to increment the time; press the  $\boxdot$  key to decrement the time. Set the hour first, and then press the  $\blacksquare$  key to move to the minutes field. Press the  $\boxdot$  or  $\boxdot$  key to set the minutes, and then press the  $\blacksquare$  key to move to the seconds field. Press either the  $\boxdot$  or  $\boxdot$  key to reset the seconds field to 00.

#### SETTING SYSTEM DATE

The date option contains four fields: day of the week, month, day of the month, and year. You can set any field except the day of the week. When you change any of the other three fields, the setup program resets the day of the week.

Press the f or f key to move to a different date field. Press the r or r key to toggle among the entries in the date fields.

#### SELECTING FLOPPY DISK DRIVE TYPES

The setup program maintains information about two floppy disk drives, drive A and drive B. Press the  $\mathbf{n}$  or  $\mathbf{I}$  key to move the cursor to the field you want to change.

To change the floppy disk drive types, press the  $\boxdot$  or  $\boxdot$  key. The following options will be displayed:

3.5 Inch, 1.44 MB 3.5 Inch, 720 KB 5.25 Inch, 1.2 MB 5.25 Inch, 360 KB Not Installed

If only one floppy disk drive is installed, it will always be drive A. In this case, set drive B to "Not Installed." You cannot change the individual fields within the options.

#### SETTING FIXED DISK DRIVE TYPES

The setup program maintains drive type information for two fixed disk drives, drive C and drive D. Press the f or f key to move the cursor to the field you want to change.

Press the  $\boxdot$  or  $\boxdot$  key to display the drive type options. The following options will be displayed:

1-49 Not Installed

For standard (non-SCSI) fixed disk drives, the drive type number is usually located on a sticker on the top or rear of the drive unit.

If you do not know the drive type, the setup program contains a list of the major specifications for fixed disk drive types 1-47. To access this list from the setup screen, position the cursor in either the fixed disk C or D field and press the F1 key twice.

If the list does not include the drive type in the system, choose the userconfigurable disk type (Type 48 for drive 1 and Type 49 for drive 2). Set the number of cylinders, number of heads, write precompensation, landing zone, and sectors per track to match the specifications of the fixed disk.



#### CAUTION

Specifying an incorrect drive type may damage data on the fixed disk.

Select "Not Installed" if a SCSI fixed disk drive is installed or if no fixed disk drive is installed. If only one fixed disk drive is installed, it will always be drive C. In this case, select "Not Installed" for drive D.

#### SETTING BASE MEMORY

If the setup screen indicates an incorrect value for base memory, press the f or I key to move the cursor to the base memory field.

To change the base memory, type in the base memory size in kilobytes. There are only two valid choices for base memory size: 512K and 640K.

#### SETTING EXTENDED MEMORY

Extended memory is random access memory (RAM) above 1024K (1M).

The first 1M of memory is used for base memory and dedicated memory. This amount must be subtracted from the total amount of RAM in the system (onboard RAM + expansion board RAM) to compute extended memory. For example, 4M of onboard memory plus 8M of expansion board memory equals 12M of extended memory. Twelve megabytes (12M) minus the first 1M of base memory leaves 11M (11264K) of extended memory.

If the POST indicates "Invalid configuration information," when the setup program is executed, it will attempt to correct the error if it is due to an invalid memory configuration.

Press the fi or II key to move the cursor to the extended memory field.

To change the extended memory value, type in the total extended memory size in kilobytes, according to the preceding formula.

The setup program will auto-configure the memory size when the system is first powered up.

#### Dote Note

Some memory expansion boards add memory in varying increments. The setup program is not restricted to set increments and accepts any memory size.

#### SETTING VIDEO DISPLAY CONTROLLER TYPE

You must specify the type of monitor controller installed in the system for the self-test to function correctly.

Press the f or key to move the cursor to the monitor controller field.

Press the  $\square$  or  $\square$  key to display the following options:

VGA/EGA:	Enhanced graphics, video graphics, or any controller with its own BIOS
CGA40:	Color/graphics adapter in 40-column mode
CGA80:	Color/graphics adapter in 80-column mode
MONO:	Monochrome controller
Not Installed:	No controller is installed. This setting allows the self- test to suppress video display errors, and permits systems such as network servers to operate without monitors.

Select the VGA/EGA option if an enhanced graphics, video graphics, or video controller with its own BIOS is installed, no matter what mode the controller is set for or if another controller is designated as the primary one. Otherwise, select the type of the primary monitor controller, or "Not Installed" if no monitor controller is installed (or if none will be installed in the final configuration).

#### SETTING KEYBOARD AVAILABILITY

You must specify the presence or absence of a keyboard for the self-test to function correctly.

Press the f or i key to move the cursor to the keyboard field.

Press the 🖃 or 🖃 key to display the Installed or Not Installed options.

Select "Installed" if a keyboard is attached to the system unit. Select "Not Installed" if no keyboard is attached. This setting allows the self-test to suppress keyboard errors and errors which would require pressing the *Enter* key, to continue permitting systems such as network servers to operate without keyboards.

#### SETTING CPU SPEED

The CPU speed setting determines the effective speed used by the system each time you turn on the power.

Press the 🗇 or 🗓 key to move the cursor to the CPU speed field.

The 25 MHz speed is the normal setting. Try 8 MHz only if you experience problems while running programs. This setting can also be changed via the keyboard (see Appendix D).

#### NUMERIC COPROCESSOR

You cannot change the math coprocessor status entry. Every time it runs, the system self-test checks the math coprocessor status. Setup simply displays the status (80387 or Not Installed).

#### 13.4.2 Moving Through Setup Screen 2

Press the Page Up key. A screen display similar to the one shown in Figure 13-2 appears.

```
Phoenix Technologies Ltd.
Additional Options
Time: 08:24:30
Date: Fri Jan 29, 1990
Shadow BIOS ROM:
                   System and Video BIOS
CACHE Memory:
                   Enabled
                   Disabled
AT32 I/0:
Above 16 Meg:
                   Enabled
Speaker:
                   Enabled
512 - 640KB:
                   Enabled
Enter SETUP:
                   Always
```

PgUp for main menu. Up/Down Arrow to select. Left/Right Arrow to change entries.

F1 for help. F10 to exit and save changes. Esc to reboot for changes to take effect.

Figure 13-2. Typical Setup Screen 2

#### SHADOWING SYSTEM BIOS AND VIDEO BIOS

The 302 board maintains an area of 32-bit RAM into which it can copy the system BIOS and video BIOS. This memory, called shadow memory, is write-protected and has the same addresses as the system BIOS and video BIOS ROM locations. System performance increases significantly because the information is maintained in fast 32-bit RAM instead of in ROM.

Press the f or key to move the cursor to the shadow BIOS ROM field.

Press the e or key to display the following options:

Shadow BIOS ROM: System and Video BIOS Shadow BIOS ROM: System BIOS Only Shadow BIOS ROM: Disabled

#### Note

The video BIOS cannot be shadowed independently of the system BIOS.

The recommended option is to shadow both the system BIOS and video BIOS to allow programs fast access to the BIOS in RAM. Disable the shadow BIOS only if you are experiencing problems when running certain application programs. Select the System BIOS Only option if you experience problems using monitor controllers.

#### CACHE MEMORY

This setting determines whether the cache will be enabled or not.

Press the f or key to move the cursor to the cache memory field.

Press the  $\square$  or  $\square$  key to display the enabled or disabled options.

Cache memory enabled is the recommended option. Cache memory disabled is the lower-performance option. Disable the cache memory only if you are experiencing problems when running with the cache memory enabled.

#### AT32 I/O

This setting determines whether I/O addresses in the range 8000:90FFH are decoded onto the AT32 bus or the I/O bus. Enabling this feature allows special AT32 boards to respond to these addresses.

Press the fi or I key to move the cursor to the AT32 I/O field.

Press the 
or 
i key to display the enabled or disabled options.

The disabled option is the recommended setting. Enable the AT32 I/O bus only if you are installing a board that requires a 32-bit I/O slot and responds to I/O addresses in the address range 8000:90FFH.

#### ABOVE 16M

The POST detects and tests contiguous extended memory. However, the ROM BIOS creates a hole below 16M (0E00000H-0FFFFFH) in the extended memory space in systems with more than 16M extended memory. This option enables users to configure address range 0E00000H-0FFFFFH as either ROM BIOS or extended memory.

Press the fi or II key to move the cursor to the Above 16M field.

Press the 
or 
i key to display the enabled or disabled options.

The default setting is disabled. If you have more than 16M in the system, it should be enabled otherwise you will be unable to access the extended memory beyond 16M.

#### 512-640 K

If the base memory in the system is 640K, this option must be enabled. If base memory is 512K, this option must be disabled.

Press the fi or i key to move the cursor to the Base Memory field.

#### SPEAKER

This setting determines whether the speaker will be enabled or not.

Press the 🗊 or 🗓 key to move the cursor to the speaker field.

Press the 🖃 or 🖃 key to display the enabled or disabled options.

Speaker enabled is the recommended setting. When the speaker is disabled through the setup program, writing to port 61H will not enable it. It must be re-enabled using the setup program.

#### ENTER SETUP

The Enter Setup option determines when you can enter the setup program by pressing the  $\boxed{\text{Ctrl}}$  +  $\boxed{\text{Att}}$  +  $\boxed{\text{Ins}}$  key sequence.

Press the 1 or 1 key to move the cursor to the Enter Setup field.

Press the  $\boxdot$  or  $\boxdot$  key to display the always or pre-boot options.

Pre-boot is the recommended setting. Selecting pre-boot allows you to enter setup only during the brief period between the time of the beep when you turn the power on and before the boot sequence. This setting prevents you from accidentally entering setup from an operating system or an application program.

If you select always, you can enter setup at any time after POST by pressing the following sequence:  $\boxed{\text{Ctrl}} + \boxed{\text{Att}} + \boxed{\text{Ins}}$ .

#### 13.5 EXITING SETUP

To exit setup after changing all desired options, press the Esc or F10 key. You can exit setup from either setup screen 1 or 2.

If you press the Esc key to exit, the setup program saves the new information and reboots the system. The new configuration changes are effective immediately. If you press the Fig key to exit, the system will not reboot. The new configuration changes are saved, but only the date and time information are effective immediately. You have to reboot the system for the other changes to be effective.

#### 13.6 ERROR MESSAGES

The following basic message can be followed by any combination of the error messages numbered one through six. These errors occur only when you run setup.

Message	Errors have been found during the power-on self-test in your computer. The errors were:		
	1. Clock chip lost power		
	2. CMOS checksum invalid		
	3. Incorrect configuration data in CMOS		
	4. Memory size in CMOS invalid		
	5. Disk C: failed initialization		
	6. Time or Date in CMOS is invalid		
	Strike any key to continue		
Possible Cause	The configuration information stored in the RTC does not agree with the hardware configuration of the 302 system.		
Solution	Make sure the jumper settings on the 302 board agree with the hardware configuration. Run setup and enter the correct configuration information.		

# Specifications



### A.1 302 BOARD SPECIFICATIONS

Table A-1 lists general specifications for the 302 board.

Table A-1.	302 Board Specifications
------------	--------------------------

Attributes		Specification
CPU CPU clock rate ISA bus speed Data path		386 32-bit microprocessor 25 MHz 8 MHz 8-, 16-, 32-bits
Addressing	Physical Virtual Supported	256M 64 terabytes 40M
Cache Memory	Size Speed	64K zero wait-state on read hit one wait-state on write cycle
ROM	Size	64K
DRAM	Size	0, 1, 2, 4, 8M
AT32 Expansion DR/	AM	4, 8, or 16M per slot (2)
Expansion Slots		Two 8-, 16- and 32-bit slots Five 8- and 16-bit slots One 8-bit slot

#### A.2 302 BOARD PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Figure A-1 shows the 302 board dimensions.



Figure A-1. 302 Board Dimensions

Table A-2 lists the physical characteristics for the 302 board.

Attributes		Specification
Dimensions	Width Length Height Weight	13.0 inches (317.2 mm) 12.6 inches (320.0 mm) 0.75 inch (1.8 cm) 43 oz. (1219 gm)
Environment	Operating temp. Storage temp. Operating humidity Altitude Shock Vibration	13 °C to 35 °C (55 °F to 95 °F) -40 °C to 65 °C (-40 °F to 149 °F) To 80% To 10,000 feet (3048 m) maximum 50 G, 11 ms, 1/2 sine wave Random vibration 10 - 1,000 Hz

Table A-2. Physical Characteristics

#### A.3 302 BOARD POWER REQUIREMENTS

The 302 board requires the power consumption and current ratings listed in Table A-3 for normal operation.

Table A-3. Power Consumption

Voltage	Nominal Current	Power (Watts)
+5.0V ±5%	6.0A	30.0
+12.0V ±10%	0.06A	0.72
-12.0V ±10%	0.08A	0.96

The 302 board contains eight expansion slots: one 8-bit, five 16-bit, and two 32-bit.

The maximum allowable +5V current available to any expansion slot depends on the number of +5V pins in the slot providing current, the power supply capacity, the power connectors, the demands of both the 302 board and all other slots in use, and the 302 board circuit traces. Each expansion slot pin can carry a maximum of 3A. Table A-4 lists the current ratings for each slot type.

Table A-4. Maximum Current Ratings

Slot Type	Maximum Allowable Current per Slot
8-bit	6A (3A per pin with 2 pins)
16-bit	9A (3A per pin with 3 pins)
32-bit	21A (3A per pin with 7 pins)



#### CAUTION

The ISA bus connectors are limited to 3A per pin maximum. The power supply connectors are limited to 5A per pin maximum. These limitations plus the maximum capacity of the power supply itself may be more restrictive than the current limitations of the pins/connectors and expansion slots. As an over limitation, do not exceed 20A total when computing total current drain for the system board. This avoids damage to the power supply and system board.

Table A-5 specifies the nominal current drain for various system board configurations.

Element	Maximum +5V Current Required
302 board - 4M/8M onboard RAM, no numeric coprocessor, no expansion	10.001
boards	12.00A
387 numeric coprocessor	0.25A
ATMEM16 memory expansion board	
4M configuration	1.39A
8M configuration	1.48A
16M configuration	1.70A

Table A-5. Maximum +5V Current Drain on 302 Board



The values for the ATMEM16 memory expansion boards are the quiescent currents. Only one 4M bank of total RAM in the system can be active at a given time. Total RAM includes all onboard RAM and ATMEM16 RAM (if present). The current drain for the 4M on active RAM is included in the 302 board current specified in Table A-5.

For example, assume your system has 8M of onboard RAM, a numeric coprocessor, and one ATMEM16 board with 16M of RAM. The total +5V current drain would be 13.95A (12.00A + 0.25A + 1.70A).

# System BIOS Specifications

# B

#### B.1 INTRODUCTION

The basic input output system (BIOS) is a software interface that isolates operating systems and application programs from specific hardware devices. The BIOS routines allow assembly language programmers to perform block and character-level operations without concern for device addresses or hardware operating characteristics. The BIOS also provides system services such as time-of-day and memory-size determination.

Application programs should make functional requests to BIOS rather than directly manipulating I/O port control words. This appendix provides a description and list of the BIOS routines.

#### B.2 NON-MASKABLE INTERRUPT (INT 02H)

The 302 board and I/O channel parity-error signals connect to the NMI pin of the CPU. When a memory parity error occurs, the hardware invokes this routine to examine a register and ensure the reason for the interrupt is a memory parity error. If no memory parity error occurred, the routine returns to the interrupted operation. The parity checking aspect is never impaired. Note the I/O channel error and parity error sources of an NMI can be disabled.

Input: None

Output: Error message; system halts

#### B.3 PRINT SCREEN (INT 05H)

Invoking this routine prints the screen. The current cursor position when the routine is invoked is saved and restored upon completion. During execution of this routine, the print screen key is ignored.

Input: None

Output: Location 50:00H

= 0 Normal termination or print screen not busy

= 1 Print screen in progress

= FFH Error during print screen

#### B.4 SYSTEM TIMER H/W INTERRUPT (INT 08H)

This interrupt occurs when channel zero of the system timer counts down to zero. The BIOS handler keeps a count of interrupts starting at power-on for use as a system clock. The BIOS handler also decrements the disk drive motor control counter and shuts off the drive when the counter expires. In addition, the BIOS handler invokes INT 1CH allowing a user routine to execute.

Input: None

Output: None

#### B.5 KEYBOARD H/W INTERRUPT (INT 09H)

This interrupt occurs each time a key is pressed. The BIOS handler checks to see if certain keys are being pressed or if a combination of keys are being pressed, for example  $\boxed{\text{Ctrl}} + \boxed{\text{Att}} + \boxed{\text{Delete}}$  or  $\boxed{\text{Pause}}$ . If either situation occurs, the BIOS handler takes appropriate action. Otherwise, the key scan-code and its ASCII value, if applicable, are moved into the keyboard buffer (provided sufficient space is available).

Input: None

Output: None

#### B.6 DISK H/W INTERRUPT (INT 0EH)

This interrupt occurs when the disk drive requires attention. During multi-sector transfers, the controller interrupts for each transfer. A completed operation also generates an interrupt. The BIOS handler sets bit 7 of the byte at 40:30H indicating an interrupt occurred.

Input: None

Output: None

#### B.7 VIDEO I/O (INT 10H)

This program interface allows control of the video display. Table B-1 defines the AH values for the video I/O.

AH Value	Function
00H	Set display mode
01H	Set cursor size
02H	Set cursor position
03H	Read cursor position
04H	Read light pen position
05H	Select active display page (valid only for text modes)
06H	Scroll window up
07H	Scroll window down
08H	Read attribute/character at current cursor position
09H	Write attribute/character at current cursor position
0AH	Write character only at current cursor position
0BH	Set color palette
0CH	Write dot
0DH	Read dot
0EH	Write character as teletype to active page
OFH	Get current video mode
13H	Write string

Table B-1.Video I/O

These functions are contained in the system BIOS and can be enhanced or replaced by the functions contained in the BIOS ROM on a plug-in video controller. Each function is described in the following text.

#### B.7.1 Set Display Mode

This function sets the display mode for the active controller. The monochrome display controller only uses modes 0 and 7.

Input:

AH = 00HAL Mode value

#### Graphics Mode:

 $\begin{array}{l} AL = 04H & 320 \times 200 \ \mbox{color} \\ AL = 05H & 320 \times 200 \ \mbox{B\&W} \\ AL = 06H & 640 \times 200 \ \mbox{B\&W} \\ AL = 11H & 640 \times 480 \ \mbox{color} \end{array}$ 

#### **Enhanced Graphics Mode:**

 $\begin{array}{l} AL = 0DH & 320 \ x \ 200 & 16 \ colors \\ AL = 0EH & 640 \ x \ 200 & 16 \ colors \\ AL = 0FH & 640 \ x \ 350 & B&W \\ AL = 10H & 640 \ x \ 350 & 16/64 \ colors \end{array}$ 

Output:

None

#### Set Cursor Size **B.7.2**

This function programs the CRTC cursor start/end register to set the desired cursor size.

Input:	AH = 01H CH (bits 4:0) (bit 5) (bit 6) CL (bits 4:0)	Set cursor type Start line for cursor Control cursor display 0 = Normal 1 = No cursor Set to 0 End line for cursor
Output:	None	

#### **Set Cursor Position B.7.3**

This function programs the CRTC cursor position register to display the cursor at the desired location. When the specified page number differs from the active display page, no visible reaction occurs.

Input:	AH = 02H DH,DL BH	Row, column (0,0 upper left corner) Page number (must be 0 for graphics modes)
Output:	None	

#### B.7.4 Read Cursor Position

This function returns the current cursor position of the specified page.

Input:	АН = 03Н ВН	Page number (must be 0 for graphics modes)
Output:	DH,DL CH,CL	Row, column of current cursor position Cursor size parameters

#### B.7.5 Read Light Pen Position

This function returns the current light pen position.

Input:	AH = 04H	
Output:	AH = 00H	Light pen switch not down/not triggered
	AH = 01H DH,DL	Valid light pen value in registers Row, column of light pen character position
	CH BX	Raster line (0:199) Pixel column (0:319, 0:639)

#### B.7.6 Select Active Display Page

This function selects the active display page and is valid only for text modes.

Input:	AH = 05H	
	AL	New page value (0:7 for modes 0 & 1, 0:3 for modes 2 & 3)

Output: None

#### B.7.7 Scroll Window Up

This function scrolls up the given area in the active page.

Input:	AH = 06H AL	Number of lines blanked at bottom of window 0 = Blank entire window
	CH,CL	Row, column of upper left corner of window
	DH,DL	Row, column of lower right corner of window
	BH	Attribute used on blank line
Output:	None	

#### B.7.8 Scroll Window Down

This function scrolls down the given area in the active page.

Input:	AH = 07H AL CH,CL DH,DL BH	Number of input lines blanked at top of window 0 = Blank entire window Row, column of upper left corner of window Row, column of lower right corner of window Attribute used on blank line
Output:	None	

#### B.7.9 Read Attribute/Character at Current Cursor Position

This function reads the attribute and character displayed at the cursor position.

Input:	AH = 08H BH	Display page (used for text modes only)
Output:	AL AH	Character read Attribute of character read (text modes only)

#### B.7.10 Write Attribute/Character at Current Cursor Position

This function writes the specified attribute and character to the display at the current cursor position. Cursor position does not change.

Input:	AH = 09H	
	AL	Character to write
	BH	Display page (used for text modes only)
	BL	Attribute of character (text) or
		color of character (graphics)
	CX	Number of times to write the character and attribute
		In graphics mode the write does not
		continue to the next line
Output:	None	

0

#### **B.7.11** Write Character Only at Current Cursor Position

This function writes the character on the display at the current cursor position. Cursor position is unchanged.

Input:	AH = 0AH AL BH CX	Character written Display page (used for text modes only) Number of times to write the character (in graphics mode the write does not continue to the next line)
Output:	None	

#### B.7.12 Set Color Palette

This function programs the CRTC border control register to set the desired color.

Input:	AH = 0BH BH BL BH = 00H	Color ID set (0-1) Color value used with color ID Set background color for 320 x 200 graphics modes Set border color for alphanumeric modes Set foreground color for 640 x 200 graphics
	BL = 0-31 BH = 01H BL = 0 BL = 1	Select palette for 320 x 200 graphics Green (1)/red (2)/brown (3) Cyan (1)/magenta (2)/white (3)
Output:	None	

#### B.7.13 Write Dot

This function writes a dot at the specified location.

Input:	AH = 0CH AL CX DX	Color value The color value is exclusive read with the current color at that location if bit $7 = 1$ Column number Row number
Output:	None	

#### B.7.14 Read Dot

This function reads the dot at the specified location.

Input:	AH = 0DH		
	CX	Column number	
	DX	Row number	
Output:	AL	Color data	

#### B.7.15 Write Character as Teletype to Active Page

This function writes a character at the cursor position of the active page and moves the cursor to the next position. The attribute remains the same in text mode. The cursor moves to the next line and scrolls the screen, if applicable.

Input:	AH = 0EH AL BL	Character to write Foreground color in graphics mode
Output:	None	

#### B.7.16 Get Current Video Mode

This function returns the current video mode.

Input:	AH = 0FH	
Output:	AH AL BH	Number of columns on screen Mode currently set Current active display page

#### B.7.17 Write String

This function displays a string of characters on the display.

Input:	AH = 13H ES:BP CX DH,DL BH AL = 00H	Pointer to character string to write Length of character string to write Row, column string write Page number BL = Attribute, string {char,, char} Cursor does not move
	AL = 01H $AL = 02H$	BL = Attribute, string {char,, char} Cursor moves String {char, attr,, char, attr} Cursor does not move
	AL = 03H	String {char, attr,, char, attr} Cursor moves

Output:

None

#### **B.8** EQUIPMENT DETERMINATION (INT 11H)

This program interface describes the hardware installed in the system.

Input:	None	
Output:	AX Bits 15:14 Bit 13 Bit 12 Bits 11:9 Bit 8 Bits 7:6	Number of printers attached Internal modem Not used Number of RS-232 ports attached Not used Number of floppy disk drives ( $00 = 1$ ; 01 = 2 only if bit $0 = 1$ )
	Bits 5:4	Initial video mode 00 = Not used $01 = 40 \times 25 color$ $10 = 80 \times 25 color$ $11 = 80 \times 25 monochrome$
	Bit 3 Bit 2	Not used Pointing device 1 = Pointing device installed 2 = Pointing device not installed
	Bit 1	Numeric coprocessor 1 = Numeric coprocessor installed 0 = Numeric coprocessor not installed
	Bit 0	Floppy disk drive 1 = Floppy disk drive installed 0 = Floppy disk drive not installed

Intel386™ MicroComputer Model 302 Board
#### B.9 MEMORY SIZE DETERMINATION (INT 12H)

This routine returns the RAM size below address 10000H.

Input: None

Output: AX Number of contiguous 1K blocks of memory

#### B.10 FLOPPY DISK DRIVE I/O (INT 13H, PART 1)

This interface provides access to the disk drives supported by the system. Table B-2 defines the AH values for the Floppy Disk Drive I/O (part 1).

AH Value	Function	n	
00Н	Reset dis	k drive	
01H	Read stat	us	
02H	Disk read		
03H	Disk write		
04H	Disk verify	/	
05H	Format di	isk track	
08H	Disk drive	parameters	
15H	Read dire	Read direct access storage device (DASD) type	
16H	Disk change line status		
17H	Set DASD type for format		
18H	Set media type for format		
loouti	АН	Function number	
Input:	AL	Function number Number of sectors	
	CH	Track number	
	CH	Sector number	
	DH	Head number	
	DL	Drive number	
	ES:BX	Transfer address	
	EO.DA	mansier audress	

Table B-2.Floppy Disk Drive I/O (part 1)

Output:	, ,	If there is an operation error If operation is correct Status of operation No error Invalid function request Address mark not found Write protect error Requested sector not found Media changed DMA overrun Attempt to DMA across 64K
	AH = 0CH AH = 10H AH = 20H	boundary Media type not found CRC error on disk read
	AH = 20H AH = 40H AH = 80H	General controller failure Seek operation failed Timeout

## B.10.1 Reset Disk Drive

Input:	AH = 00H	
Output:	DL	Drive number (0-based) Bit 7=0 floppy disk

# B.10.2 Read Status

Input:	AH = 01H	
Output:	DL	Drive number (0-based) Bit 7=0 floppy disk (value checked)

# B.10.3 Disk Read

Input:	AH = 02H AL CH CL DH DL ES:BX	Number of sectors Track number Sector number Head number Drive number Address of buffer
Output:	$\begin{array}{l} AH\\ AL\\ CY=1\\ CY=0 \end{array}$	Status of operation Number of sectors transferred Error No error

## B.10.4 Disk Write

Input:	AH = 03H AL CH CL DH DL ES:BX	Number of sectors Track number Sector number Head number Drive number Address of buffer
Output:	AH AL CY = 1 CY = 0	Status of operation Number of sectors transferred Error No error

# B.10.5 Disk Verify

Input:	AH = 04H		
	AL	Number of sectors	
	CH	Track number	
	CL	Sector number	
	DH	Head number	
	DL.	Drive number	
Output:	AH	Status of operation	
	AL	Number of sectors verified	
	CY = 1	Error	
	CY = 0	No error	

# B.10.6 Format Disk Track

Input:	AH = 05H AL CH DH DL ES:BX	Number of sectors Track number Head number Drive number Address of buffer containing a series of 4 byte fields for each sector: Byte 1 = Track Byte 2 = Head Byte 3 = Sector Byte 4 = Bytes/sector 0 = 128 bytes/sector 1 = 256 bytes/sector 2 = 512 bytes/sector 3 = 1024 bytes/sector
Output:	AH CY = 1 CY = 0	Status of operation Error No error

# B.10.7 Disk Drive Parameters

Input:	AH = 08H DL	Drive number
Output:	ES:DI CH	Pointer to drive parameter table Maximum number of tracks (low order 8 bits)
	CL (bits 7:6)	Maximum number of tracks (high order 2 bits)
	(bits 5:0)	Maximum sectors per track
	DH	Maximum head number
	DL	Number of floppy disk drives installed
	BH	0
	BL (bits 7:4)	0
	(bits 3:0)	Valid drive type value in CMOS RAM
		01 - 360K drive
		02 - 1.2M drive
		03 - 720K drive
		04 - 1.4M drive
	AX	0

# B.10.8 Read DASD Type

Input:	AH = 15H DL	Drive number 0-3=floppy
Output:	AH = 00H AH = 01H AH = 02H AH = 03H CY = 1 CY = 0	Drive not present Disk, no change line available Disk, change line available Fixed disk drive Error No error

# B.10.9 Disk Change Line Status

Input:	AH = 16H DL	Drive number
Output:	AH = 01H AH = 80H CY = 1H AH = 0H AH = 01H AH = 06H AH = 80H	Invalid parameter Drive not ready AH=0 Floppy disk change line not active Invalid floppy disk parameter Floppy disk change line active Floppy disk drive not ready

# B.10.10 Set DASD Type for Format

Input:	AH = 17H AL = 00H AL = 01H AL = 02H AL = 03H AL = 04H DL	Not used 360K floppy disk in 360K drive 360K floppy disk in 1.2M drive 1.2M floppy disk in 1.2M drive 720K floppy disk in 720K drive All other are invalid Drive number 0-3
Output:	AH CY = 1 CY = 0	Status of operation Error No error

# **B.10.11** Set Media Type for Format

Input:	AH = 18H CH	Maximum number of tracks (low order 8 bits)
	CL (bits 7:6)	Maximum number of tracks (high order 2 bits)
	(bits 5:0)	Maximum sectors per track
	DL	Drive number
Output:	ES:DI	Pointer to drive parameter table for this media type. Unchanged if AH is non-zero
	CY = 0	
	AH = 00H	Successful. Track and sector combination supported
	CY = 1	• •
	AH = 01H AH = 0CH	Function not available Track and sector combination not supported

# B.11 FIXED DISK I/O (INT 13H, PART 2)

This interface provides access to fixed disk drives through the fixed/floppy combo controller. Table B-3 defines the AH values for the Fixed Disk I/O.

ATT M-1.	E	
AH Value	Functio	Dn
ООН	Disk reset	
01H	Read sta	atus
02H	Read dis	sk
03H	Write dis	k
04H	Verify dis	sk sectors
05H	Format o	disk track
08H	Disk driv	e parameters
09H	Initialize	disk parameters
0AH	Disk rea	d long
0BH	Disk writ	e long
0CH	Disk see	k
0DH	Disk alternate reset	
10H	Disk ready test	
11H	Disk recalibrate	
14H	Disk diagnostics	
15H	Read DASD type	
Input:	AH	Function number
input.	AL	Number of sectors
	CH	Cylinder number (0:1023)
	CL	Sector number (1:17)
	0L	High 2 bits of cylinder number are
		placed in the high 2 bits of the CL
		register
	DH	Head number (0:15 are allowed)
	DL	Drive number (80H:81H)
	ES:BX	Transfer address

Table B-3. Fixed Disk I/O (part 2)

Out	out.
Out	pul.

See individual functions

Output:

Carry flag $= 1$	If there is an operation error
Carry flag $= 0$	If operation is correct
AH	Status of operation
AH = 00H	No error
AH = 01H	Invalid function passed or invalid parameter
AH = 02H	Address mark not found
AH = 04H	Requested sector not found
AH = 05H	Reset failed
AH = 07H	Drive parameter activity failed
AH = 08H	DMA overrun on operation
AH = 09H	Attempt to DMA across 64K boundary
AH = 0AH	Bad sector flag detected
AH = 0BH	Bad cylinder detected
AH = 0DH	Invalid number of sectors on format
AH = 0EH	Control data address mark detected
AH = 0FH	DMA arbitration level out of range
AH = 10H	Uncorrectable ECC or CRC error
AH = 11H	ECC corrected data error
AH = 20H	General controller failure
AH = 40H	Seek operation failed
AH = 80H	Timeout
AH = AAH	Drive not ready or not selected
AH = BBH	Undefined error occurred
AH = CCH	Write fault error on selected drive
AH = E0H	Status error/error register $= 0$
AH = FFH	Sense operation failed

#### B.11.1 Disk Reset

Input:	AH = 00H	
	DL	Drive number
Output:	AH	Status
	CY = 1	Error
	CY = 0	No error

#### B.11.2 **Read Status**

Input:

Output:

AH = 01H	
DL	Drive number bit 7=1

#### **Read Disk** B.11.3

Input:	AH = 02H AL CH CL (bits 7:6)	, , ,
	(bits 5:0) DL DH ES:BX	Sector number Drive number bit 7=1 Head number Address of buffer
Output:	AH CY = 1 CY = 0	Status of operation Error No error

### B.11.4 Write Disk

Inpu	ıt:	AH = 03H	
		AL	Number of sectors
		СН	Cylinder number (low order 8 bits)
		CL (bits 7:6)	Cylinder number (high order 2 bits)
		(bits 5:0)	Sector number
		DH	Head number
		DL	Drive number
		ES:BX	Address of buffer

Output:	AH	Status of operation
	CY = 1	Error
	CY = 0	No error

# **B.11.5** Verify Disk Sectors

Input:	AH = 04H	
	AL	Number of sectors
	СН	Cylinder number (low order 8 bits)
	CL (bits 7:6)	Cylinder number (high order 2 bits)
	(bits 5:0)	Sector number
	DL	Drive number
	DH	Head number
		_
Output:	CY = 1	Error
	CY = 0	No error

# B.11.6 Format Disk Track

Input:	AH = 05H AL CH CL (bits 7:6) (bits 5:0) DL DH ES:BX	,
Output:	$\begin{array}{l} AH\\ CY=1\\ CY=0 \end{array}$	Status of operation Error No error

### **B.11.7** Disk Drive Parameters

Input: AH = 08HDL Drive number Output: AX = 0BH = 0DL Number of disk drives installed DH Maximum usable head number СН Cylinder number (low order 8 bits) CL (bits 7:6) Cylinder number (high order 2 bits) (bits 5:0) Sector number CY = 1Error CY = 0No error

### B.11.8 Initialize Disk Parameters

Input:	AH = 09H DL	Drive number
Output:	AH CY = 1 CY = 0	Status Error No error

### B.11.9 Disk Read Long

Input:

AH = 0AH AL CH CL (bits 7:6) (bits 5:0) DH DL ES:BX	Number of sectors Cylinder number (low order 8 bits) Cylinder number (high order 2 bits) Sector number Head number Drive number Buffer address (Must accommodate four
E3.DA	bytes of ECC per sector)

Output:	AH	Status of operation
	CY = 1	Error
	CY = 0	No error

# B.11.10 Disk Write Long

Input:	AH = 0BH	
•	AL	Number of sectors
	CH	Cylinder number (low order 8 bits)
	CL (bits 7:6)	Cylinder number (high order 2 bits)
	(bits 5:0)	Sector number
	DH	Head number
	DL	Drive number
	ES:BX	Buffer address
		Each sector of data is followed by the 4-byte
		ECC
Output	A1.1	Ctatus of anaration
Output:	AH	Status of operation
	CY = 1	Error
	CY = 0	No error

# B.11.11 Disk Seek

Input:	AH = 0CH CH CL (bits 7:6) (bits 5:0) DH DL	Cylinder number (low order 8 bits) Cylinder number (high order 2 bits) Sector number Head number Drive number
Output:	AH CY = 1 CY = 0	Status of operation Error No error

# B.11.12 Disk Alternate Reset

This function is the same as function 00H.

Input:	AH = 0DH DL	Drive number
Output:	$\begin{array}{l} AH \\ CY = 1 \\ CY = 0 \end{array}$	Status Error No error

# B.11.13 Disk Ready Test

Input:	AH = 10H DL	Drive number
Output:	AH CY = 1 CY = 0	Status (if fixed disk drive present) Error No error

## B.11.14 Disk Recalibrate

Input:	AH = 11H DL	Drive number
Output:	$\begin{array}{l} AH \\ CY = 1 \\ CY = 0 \end{array}$	Status (if fixed disk drive present) Error No error

### **B.11.15** Disk Diagnostics

Input:	AH = 14H DL	Drive number
Output:	$\begin{array}{l} AH \\ CY = 1 \\ CY = 0 \end{array}$	Status Error No error

## B.11.16 Read DASD Type

This function is the same as the Floppy Disk function (15H).

Input:	AH = 15H DL	Drive number
Output:	AH = 00H $AH = 01H$ $AH = 02H$ $AH = 03H$ $CX:DX$ $CY = 1$ $CY = 0$	Drive not present Disk, no change line available Disk, change line available Fixed disk drive Contains total number of sectors Invalid drive number No error

## B.12 RS-232 I/O (INT 14H)

This program interface provides access to the asynchronous communication I/O port. The communication port number is not checked. Table B-4 defines the AH values for the RS-232 I/O.

AH Value	Functi	on
00H 01H 02H 03H	Send a Receive	e the communication port character e a character the communication port status
Input:	AH DX	Function number Communication port number (0:3)
Output:	See indiv	vidual functions

Table B-4. RS-232 I/O

# **B.12.1** Initialize the Communication Port

Input:

AH = 00H	
DX	Communication port number (0:3)
AL	Parameters for initialization
Bits 7:5	Baud rate
	000 = 110 bps
	001 = 150  bps
	010 = 300  bps
	011 = 600  bps
	100 = 1200  bps
	101 = 2400  bps
	110 = 4800  bps
	111 = 9600 bps
Bits 4:3	Parity
	00 = No parity
	01 = Odd parity
	10 = No parity
Dho	11 = Even parity
Bit 2	Stop bit
	0 = 1 stop bit
	1 = 2 stop bits
Bits 1:0	Word length
	10 = 7 bits
	11 = 8 bits

Output:

AH	Line status:
Bit 7	Time out
Bit 6	Transmitter shift register empty
Bit 5	Transmitter holding register empty
Bit 4	Break detected
Bit 3	Framing error
Bit 2	Parity error
Bit 1	Overrun error
Bit 0	Data ready
AL	Modem status:
Bit 7	Received line signal detect
Bit 6	Ring indicator
Bit 5	Data set ready
Bit 4	Clear to send
Bit 3	Delta receive line signal detect
Bit 2	Trailing edge ring detector
Bit 1	Delta data set ready
Bit 0	Delta clear to send

# B.12.2 Send a Character

Input:	AH = 01H AL DX	Character Communication port number (0:3)
Output:	AL AH	Character Line status (see Section B.12.1 for descriptions)

# B.12.3 Receive a Character

Input:	AH = 02H DX	Communication port number (0:3)
Output:	AH = 00H AL AH	No error Character received Line status (see Section B.12.1 for descriptions)

# **B.12.4** Return the Communication Port Status

Input:	AH = 03H DX	Communication port number (0:3)
Output:	Refer to Section	on B.12.1.

#### B.13 SYSTEM SERVICE ROUTINES (INT 15H)

This program interface allows access to the 386 extended functions. Table B-5 defines the AH values for the System Service Routines.

AH Value	Function
4F	Keyboard intercept (null)
80	Device open (null)
81	Device close (null)
82	Program termination (null)
83	Event wait (null)
84	Joystick support
85	System request key pressed (null)
86	Wait
87	Move block
88	Extended memory size determination
89	Switch coprocessor to virtual mode
90	Device busy (null)
91	Interrupt complete (null)
CO	Return system configuration parameters
Input:	AH Function number

Table B-5.System Service Routines

Output: See individual functions

## **B.13.1** Keyboard Intercept

The hardware keyboard interrupt INT 09H routine calls the keyboard intercept asynchronously. This allows keystroke changes. Normally the system returns with the scan code unchanged, but the operating system can redirect interrupt 15H to its own routine and

- Replace (AL) with a different scan code and return with the carry flag set, effectively changing the keystroke.
- Process the keystroke and return with the carry flag cleared, causing the interrupt 09H routine to ignore the keystroke.

The RET 2 instruction must be used when returning from scan code handling. This clears the stack and prevents the flag just set from being overwritten with its previous state.

Input:	AH = 4FH	
Output:		Scan code Handle code Ignore keystroke

# B.13.2 Device Open

This function reserved for the operating system.

Input:	AH = 80H BX CX	Device ID Process ID
Output:	AH = 0 CY = 0	

# **B.13.3** Device Close

This function reserved for the operating system.

Input:	AH = 81H	
	BX	Device ID
	CX	Process ID
Output:	AH = 0 CY = 0	
	CI = 0	

## **B.13.4 Program Termination**

This function reserved for the operating system.

Input:	AH = 82H BX	Device ID
Output:	$\begin{array}{l} AH=0\\ CY=0 \end{array}$	

#### B.13.5 Event Wait

This function sets a timer which counts off CX:DX microseconds. When the timer expires, the high bit of the byte pointed to by ES:BX is set. Make sure the bit is cleared initially, and monitor the bit after invoking this function. The real-time clock periodic interrupt counts the interval (1/1024th of a second). The event wait handler takes this into account, however, the shortest interval available is 1 ms.

Input:	AH = 83H	
	AL = 0	Set interval
	AL = 1	Cancel
	ES:BX	Pointer to a byte
	CX:DX	Number of microseconds to wait
Output:	CY = 0 CY = 1 AH = 0	Not busy (AL not equal to 0) Busy (AL = 0)
	$A\Pi = 0$	

### **B.13.6** Joystick Support

This routine supports an interface between a joystick interface and the system.

Input:	AH = 84H DX = 0 DX = 1	Read current switch settings Read resistive inputs
Output:	CY = 1 If $DX = 0$ AL = Switch s	Invalid call etting (bits 7:4)
	If $DX = 1$ AX = a(x) value BX = a(y) value CX = b(x) value DX = b(y) value	le Je

#### B.13.7 System Request Key Pressed

Pressing the system request (SysRq) key loads the BIOS keyboard hardware interrupt routine, loads AX with 8500H, and invokes INT 15H. This vector can be revectored. Releasing the key invokes INT 15H, this time with 8501H in AX.

Input:	AH = 85H AL = 00 key pressed AL = 01 key released
Output:	$\begin{array}{l} AH=0\\ CY=0 \end{array}$

#### B.13.8 Wait

This function waits for the specified number of microseconds before returning to caller. The real-time clock periodic interrupt counts the interval (1/1024th of a second). The event wait handler takes this into account, however, the shortest interval available is 1 ms.

Input:	AH = 86H CX,DX	Number of microseconds to elapse before return to caller
Output:	CY = 0 CY = 1	Function successful Wait function already in progress

### **B.13.9** Move Block

This function transfers up to 32,768 words to or from extended memory.

Input:	AH = 87H CX ES:SI	Number of words to move, maximum count = 8000H (32K) words Global descriptor table (GDT) pointer. User must set up the GDT.
Output:	AH = 00H $AH = 01H$ $AH = 02H$ $AH = 03H$ $CY = 0$ $CY = 1$	Successful RAM parity (parity error cleared on return) Exception interrupt occurred Gate address line 20 failed Successful Error

## **B.13.10** Extended Memory Size Determination

This routine returns the number of consecutive 1K blocks above 1M of memory. CMOS RAM locations 30 and 31H, set when the system was started, obtains this value.

Input:	AH = 88H	
Output:	AX	Number of consecutive 1K blocks starting at 1M

# B.13.11 Switch CPU to Protected Mode

This routine sets the CPU to protected mode.

Input:	AH = 89H ES:SI BH	Pointer to GDT. User must set up the GDT Offset into interrupt descriptor table (IDT) where first eight 8259 interrupts are to
	BL	occur Offset into IDT where second eight 8259 interrupts occur
Output:	AH = 0	If successful Segment registers set for protected mode operation, AX and BP destroyed

# B.13.12 Device Busy

This function reserved for the operating system.

Input:	AH = 90H AL	Type code
Output:	CY = 0 CY = 1	No error Timeout
Type	<b>Description</b>	Timeout
00	Fixed disk	yes
01	Disk	yes
02	Keyboard	no
80	Network	no
FC	Fixed disk reset	yes
FD	Drive motor start	yes
FE	Printer	yes

## **B.13.13** Interrupt Complete

This function reserved for the operating system.

Input: AH = 91HAL Type code

Output: None, AX destroyed

## **B.13.14** Return System Configuration Parameters

This routine gives information about the model of the board, the BIOS revision level, and hardware features.

Input:	AH = C0H	
Output:	CY = 0 AH = 0 ES:BX	Pointer to system descriptor table in ROM

Table B-6 provides information on the system configuration.

Size	Description	Value
Word	Descriptor length (bytes)	008
Byte	Model Submodel	FC 01
Byte Byte	BIOS revision level	00
Byte	Feature information	70
Bit $7 = 1$	BIOS uses DMA channel 3	, 0
Bit $6 = 1$	One interrupt controller	
Bit 5 = 1	Real-time clock present	
Bit 4 = 0	System hook in keyboard	
	interrupt routine	
Bit 3 = 0	Reserved	
Bit 2 = 0	Extended BIOS data area	
	allocated	
Bit $1 = 0$	Reserved	
Bit 0 = 0	Reserved	

Table B-6.System Descriptor Table

The A20 Gate control routine will reside at absolute memory location 0F000H:0FF82H. Table B-7 lists information used to determine if services for the A20 Gate are present.

Table B-7. Gat	e A20 Control	Routine
----------------	---------------	---------

ES:BX + Offset	Table Offset	Description
0A	0	A word entry indicating the nominal size of the table (0008H).
OC	2	Byte entry
0D	3	Byte entry
0E	4	String: 'PTL'
11	7	Phoenix Feature Byte 1
12	8	Phoenix Feature Byte 2 (nominally 0)
13	9	Phoenix Feature Byte 3 (nominally 0)

Bit 7 of Phoenix Feature byte 1 is set if the Gate A20 control routine is supported, otherwise it will be cleared.

Input:	AH = 8 AL = 0 AL = 1 AL = 2	Identify the call as an A20 call Attempt to disable A20 Attempt to enable A20 The current state of A20 is returned in AH If enabled, $AH = 1$ If disabled, $AH = 0$
Output:	CY = 1	An error has been encountered in processing
	CY = 0	No error

# B.14 KEYBOARD I/O (INT 16H)

This program interface provides an interface to access keys placed into the keyboard buffer by the keyboard hardware interrupt. Table B-8 defines the AH values for the Keyboard I/O.

AH Value	Function
00Н	Read next character
01H	Read buffer status
02H	Return shift status
03H	Set typematic rate and delay
05H	Place ASCII character/scan code in keyboard buffer
10H	Extended read interface for the enhanced keyboard
11H	Extended buffer status for the enhanced keyboard
12H	Return the extended shift status for the enhanced keyboard

Table B-8. Keyboard I/O

# B.14.1 Read Next Character

This function returns the scan code and ASCII code of the next character in the keyboard buffer, and updates the buffer pointer. If the keyboard buffer is empty, the function waits for a key.

Input:	AH = 00H	
Output:	AH AL	Scan code ASCII character (0 for special keys, function keys, etc.)

## B.14.2 Read Buffer Status

This function returns the keyboard buffer status (indicates whether a keystroke is available or not). The buffer pointer is not updated, even though the key returns. Use function 00H to update the buffer pointer.

Input: AH = 01H

Output:	ZF = 1	No keystroke queued
	ZF = 0	Keystroke available in queue, key in AX

## B.14.3 Return Shift Status

Pressing a shift key does not transfer the scan code/ASCII code into the keyboard buffer. Instead, a shift status bit is set. This function indicates which key is pressed.

Input: AH = 02H

Output:

ALShift statusBit 0 = 1Right-Shift pressedBit 1 = 1Left-Shift pressedBit 2 = 1Ctrl-Shift pressedBit 3 = 1Alt-Shift pressedBit 4 = 1Scroll Lock state

Bit 5 = 1 Num Lock state

Bit 6 = 1 Caps Lock state

Bit 7 = 1 Insert state

All other registers are restored

#### **B.14.4** Set Typematic Rate and Delay

Pressing most keys causes the keyboard to repeat the key until the key is released. This function is used to set the typematic rate and delay time. The typematic rate is the rate at which the keyboard repeats the key. Delay time is the time between the first keystroke and the repeated keystrokes.

In	ทเ	ıt	•
	μι	л	•

$AH = 03H \\ BL = 00H \\ BL = 01H \\ BL = 02H \\ BL = 02H \\ BL = 03H \\ BL = 04H \\ BL = 05H \\ BL = 05H \\ BL = 06H \\ BL = 07H \\ BL = 08H \\ BL = 09H \\ BL = 00H \\ BL = 0CH \\ BL = 00H \\ BL = 00H \\ BH = 00H \\ BH = 01H $	30.0 26.7 24.0 21.8 20.0 18.5 17.1 16.0 15.0 13.3 12.0 10.9 10.0 9.2 8.5 8.0 Delay va 250 ms	tic rate (bits 4:0) BL = 10H BL = 11H BL = 12H BL = 13H BL = 14H BL = 15H BL = 16H BL = 17H BL = 18H BL = 19H BL = 10H BL = 10H BL = 10H BL = 10H BL = 110H BL = 10H BL = 10H	$\begin{array}{c} 7.5 \\ 6.7 \\ 6.0 \\ 5.5 \\ 5.0 \\ 4.6 \\ 4.3 \\ 4.0 \\ 3.7 \\ 3.3 \\ 3.0 \\ 2.7 \\ 2.5 \\ 2.3 \\ 2.1 \\ 2.0 \end{array}$
BH = 00H BH = 01H BH = 02H BH = 03H	250 ms 500 ms 750 ms 1000 ms	5	

Output:

None

### B.14.5 Place ASCII Character/Scan Code in Keyboard Buffer

This function places an ASCII character/scan code combination into the keyboard buffer.

Input:	AH = 05H CL CH	ASCII code Scan code
Output:	AL = 00H AL = 01H	Successful operation Keyboard buffer full

#### B.14.6 Extended Read Interface for the Enhanced Keyboard

This function corresponds to AH = 0, but supports the enhanced keyboard.

Input:	AH = 10H	
Output:	AH AL	Scan code ASCII code

### B.14.7 Extended Buffer Status for the Enhanced Keyboard

This function corresponds to AH = 1, but supports the enhanced keyboard.

Input:	AH = 11H

Output:ZF = 1No keystroke queuedZF = 0Keystroke is available, key in AX

#### **B.14.8** Return the Extended Shift Status for the Enhanced Keyboard

This function corresponds to AH = 2, but supports the enhanced keyboard.

Input:

AH = 12H

Output:	AL Bit $0 = 1$ Bit $1 = 1$ Bit $2 = 1$ Bit $3 = 1$ Bit $4 = 1$ Bit $5 = 1$ Bit $6 = 1$ Bit $7 = 1$	Right-Shift key pressed Left-Shift key pressed Control key pressed Alt key pressed Scroll Lock state Num Lock state Caps key state Insert state
Output:	AHBit 0 = 1Bit 1 = 1Bit 2 = 1Bit 3 = 1Bit 4 = 1Bit 5 = 1Bit 6 = 1Bit 7 = 1	Left-Ctrl-Shift Left-Alt-Shift Right-Ctrl-Shift Right-Alt-Shift Scroll-Lock-Shift Num-Lock-Shift Caps-Lock-Shift SysRq-Shift

# B.15 PRINTER I/O (INT 17H)

This program interface allows access to the printer. Table B-9 defines the AH values for the Printer I/O.

AH Value	Functio	on
00H 01H 02H		aracter printer port rinter status
Input:	AH DX	Function number Device number (0:2)
Output:	See indiv	idual functions

# B.15.1 Print Character

This function writes the character in AL to the specified printer.

Input:	AH = 00H AL DX	Character Device number (0:2)
Output:	AH = 0FH AH Bit 0 = 1 Bits 1:2 Bit 3 = 1 Bit 4 = 1 Bit 5 = 1 Bit 6 = 1 Bit 7 = 1	Invalid port Printer status Timeout Reserved I/O error Printer selected Out of paper Acknowledge Not busy

#### B.15.2 **Initialize Printer Port**

Input:

AH = 01H

DX

Output:

AH	Printer status
Bit $0 = 1$	Timeout
Bits 1:2	Reserved
Bit 3 = 1	I/O error
Bit 4 = 1	Printer selected
Bit 5 = 1	Out of paper
Bit 6 = 1	Acknowledge
Bit 7 = 1	Not busy

Device number (0:2)

#### **Read Printer Status** B.15.3

Input:	AH = 02H DX	Device number (0:2)
Output:		Printer status Timeout Reserved I/O error Printer selected Out of paper Acknowledge Not busy
#### B.16 SYSTEM BOOT (INT 19H)

This routine reads the boot-sector from the disk drive into main memory and executes it. Memory does not clear unless invoked by the BIOS self-test and initialization. If a disk time-out is encountered, the routine attempts to boot from the fixed disk drive. If this fails, INT 18H is invoked.

Input: None

Output: None

#### B.17 CLOCK SERVICES (INT 1AH)

This BIOS routine allows the clock to be set or read. Table B-10 defines the AH values for the Clock Services.

Table B-10.Clock Services

Function	
Read the system timer count	
Read the real-time clock time	
Set the real-time clock time	
Read the real-time clock date	
Set the real-time clock date	
Set the real-time clock alarm	
Reset the real-time clock alarm	
	Read the system timer count Set the system timer count Read the real-time clock time Set the real-time clock time Read the real-time clock date Set the real-time clock date Set the real-time clock date

Input: Function number

Output: See individual functions

#### **B.17.1** Read the System Timer Count

This function reads the system timer from the BIOS data area. Each system timer interrupt (INT 08H), approximately 18.2 times per second, increments this value.

Input: AH = 00H

Output:

CX	High count word
DX	Low count word
AL = 0	Timer has not passed midnight since last read
AL > 0 AH = 0	Timer has passed midnight since last read

#### **B.17.2** Set the System Timer Count

This function sets the system timer in the BIOS data area.

Input:	AH = 01H CX DX	High count word Low count word
Output:	AH = 0	

#### B.17.3 Read the Real-time Clock Time

This function reads hours, minutes, and seconds from the real-time clock.

Input: AH = 02H

CH	Hours in BCD
CL	Minutes in BCD
DH	Seconds in BCD
DL = 1	Daylight savings time
DL = 0	Standard time
CY = 0	Successful
CY = 1	Clock is busy
	CL $DH$ $DL = 1$ $DL = 0$ $CY = 0$

# B.17.4 Set the Real-time Clock Time

This function sets hours, minutes, and seconds in the real-time clock.

Input:	AH = 03H CH	Hours in BCD
	CL	Minutes in BCD
	DH DL = 1	Seconds in BCD Daylight savings time
	DL = 0	Standard time
Output:	AH = 00H CY = 0 CY = 1	Successful Clock is busy

# B.17.5 Read the Real-time Clock Date

This function reads century, year, month, and day from the real-time clock.

Input:	AH = 04H	
Output:	CH CL DH DL AH = 00H	Century in BCD (19 or 20) Year in BCD Month in BCD Day in BCD
	CY = 0 CY = 1	Successful Clock busy

# B.17.6 Set the Real-time Clock Date

This function sets century, year, month, and day into the real-time clock.

Input:	AH = 05H CH CL DH DL	Century in BCD (19 or 20) Year in BCD Month in BCD Day in BCD
Output:	$\begin{array}{l} AH = 00H \\ CY = 0 \\ CY = 1 \end{array}$	Successful Clock busy

## B.17.7 Set the Real-time Clock Alarm

This function sets the alarm (hours, minutes, and seconds) to the real-time clock. When the time is up, INT 4AH is invoked.

Input:	AH = 06H CH CL DH	Hours in BCD Minutes in BCD Seconds in BCD
Output:	AH = 00H CY = 0 CY = 1	Successful Clock busy

# B.17.8 Reset the Real-time Clock Alarm

This function resets the alarm and turns off the alarm enable.

Input:	AH = 07H	
Output:	$\begin{array}{l} AH = 0OH \\ CY = 0 \\ CY = 1 \end{array}$	Successful Clock busy

# B.18 REAL-TIME CLOCK (INT 70H)

The following three conditions in the real-time clock may cause this interrupt:

- The current time matches the time set in the alarm.
- The periodic interval counter expires.
- The real-time clock completes an internal update cycle.

Each separately enabled condition must be enabled for an interrupt to occur. In a standard system, only the periodic interrupt is enabled. BIOS uses this periodic interrupt to time certain events in the system. If an alarm interrupt occurs, BIOS invokes INT 4AH and gives the program a chance to handle the alarm condition. The update cycle complete interrupt is not used.

# B.19 COPROCESSOR INTERRUPT (INT 75H)

This interrupt is caused by the 387 numeric coprocessor error which occurs with interrupts enabled at the coprocessor. To retain compatibility with 8088-based systems, the IRQ13 handler issues a software INT 02H command. The software INT 02H command causes a software generated NMI.

If an application preempts the NMI vector to handle coprocessor errors (as it must to retain compatibility with 8088-based systems), it must be sensitive to NMIs generated by hardware, and pass them on to the system NMI.

# B.20 FIXED DISK H/W INTERRUPT (INT 76H)

This interrupt occurs when the fixed disk drive requires attention. During multi-sector transfers, the controller interrupts after each transfer. A completed operation also causes an interrupt. The BIOS handler moves 0FFH to 40:8EH indicating the interrupt occurred.

# **Jumper Settings**



# C.1 INTRODUCTION

Jumper pins allow specific system operating parameters to be set in the system. Various options require changing jumper blocks to reflect the correct system configuration.

Figure C-1 diagrams the 302 board jumper pin locations. Jumper pin blocks are arranged into the following functional groups:

- Total onboard DRAM
- Onboard ROM size
- Onboard RAM size
- Onboard RAM type
- Onboard RAM speed
- Video display type
- Printer acknowledge
- Parallel printer port
- Serial communication ports



Figure C-1. 302 Board Jumper Locations

# C.2 Total Onboard DRAM

The total onboard DRAM jumpers allow you to configure the 302 board for the amount of DRAM installed in the SIMM sockets. Table C-1 lists the four options.

Amount	Jumper Pin Setting
1M	E35 to E36, E30 to E31 E33 to E34, E39 to E40
2М	E32 to E33, E35 to E36 E39 to E40, E30 to E31
4M	E33 to E34, E36 to E37 E38 to E39, E29 to E30
8M	E32 to E33, E36 to E37 E38 to E39, E29 to E30

Table C-1.Total Onboard RAM

# C.3 ONBOARD ROM SIZE

Total onboard ROM size jumpers allow you to configure the 302 board for the amount of ROM installed. Table C-2 lists the two options.

Table C-2. Onboard ROM Size

Amount	Jumper Pin Setting
64K (27256)	E23 to E24 <sup>†</sup>
128K (27512)	E24 to E25

# C.4 ONBOARD RAM

Onboard RAM jumpers include type and speed. Tables C-3 and C-4 list the RAM options for configuring the 302 board.

<b>RAM Туре</b>	Jumper Pin Setting
Static-column	E42 to E43 E44 to E45
Fast paged mode	E42 to E43† E45 to E46 <sup>T</sup>
Standard RAS/CAS	E41 to E42 E44 to E45

Table C-3.	Onboard RAM Type
------------	------------------

† Factory default

Table C-4.	Onboard RAM Speed
------------	-------------------

Speed (ns)	Jumper Pin Setting	
100	E47 to E48 <sup>†</sup>	
85	E48 to E49	

# C.5 VIDEO DISPLAY TYPE

The video display type jumper allows you to indicate the type of video display connected to the 302 board. Table C-5 lists the two options.

Table C-5.	Video	Display	Type
------------	-------	---------	------

Monitor Type	Jumper Pin Setting	
Color	E18 to E19 <sup>†</sup>	
Monochrome	E18 to E17	

† Factory default

## C.6 **PRINTER ACKNOWLEDGE**

This jumper allows you to set the printer acknowledge signal. Table C-6 lists the two options.

Table C-6. Printer Acknow
---------------------------

Condition	Jumper Pin Setting	
Leading edge	E2 to E3	
Trailing edge	E3 to E4 <sup>†</sup>	

# C.7 PARALLEL PRINTER PORT SELECTION

This jumper allows you to configure the 302 board for the desired parallel printer port. Table C-7 lists the two options.

Condition	Jumper Pin Setting	
LPT1 enabled	E5 to E6 <sup>†</sup>	
LPT1 disabled	E6 to E7	
LPT2 enabled	E8 to E9	
LPT2 disabled	E9 to E10 <sup>†</sup>	

 Table C-7.
 Parallel Printer Port Selection

† Factory default

# C.8 SERIAL COMMUNICATIONS PORT SELECTION

This jumper allows you to configure the 302 board for the desired serial communications port. Table C-8 lists the options.

 Table C-8.
 Serial Communications Port Selection

Condition	Jumper Pin Setting	
COM1 enabled	E11 to E12 <sup>†</sup>	
COM1 disabled	E12 to E13	
COM2 enabled	E14 to E15 <sup>†</sup>	
COM2 disabled	E15 to E16	

# **Changing CPU Speed**



### D.1 INTRODUCTION

This section describes changing the system speed using the setup program, the keyboard method, and the software method.

#### D.2 OVERVIEW

The CPU runs at a clock speed of 25 MHz on the 302 board. This gives the 302 board over three times the performance of an 8 MHz IBM AT. However, there are some applications that require a slower operation speed and cannot operate at a clock speed of 25 MHz. To meet this requirement, a special mode can be initiated which enables the 302 board to effectively operate at a slower speed to emulate the performance of a 8 MHz IBM AT. This special mode of operation is called deturbo mode. The opposite of deturbo mode (full speed system operation) is sometimes referred to as turbo mode. Deturbo mode can be enabled in the setup program, from the keyboard, or with a software program. Conversely, the normal or turbo mode can be enabled in the same manner.

Deturbo mode does not actually affect the clock rate of the CPU or the 387 numeric coprocessor (if one is installed). Deturbo mode disables the cache and inserts CPU wait states between each instruction, resulting in an effective CPU speed of 8 MHz.

If the system is put in deturbo mode, it will remain in deturbo mode even after warm reboots ( $\boxed{\text{Ctrl}} + \boxed{\text{Att}} + \boxed{\text{Delete}}$ ) or other software resets. However, a power-on reset will put the system back to the mode selected by the Setup program.

#### D.3 KEYBOARD METHOD

The following keystroke sequences can be used to set the system speed.

Ctrl + Alt + 1	Hold down cm and At and press 1 on the numerical keypad to place the system in deturbo mode.
Ctrl + Alt + 2	Hold down cm and At and press 2 on the numerical

keypad to place the system in turbo mode.

An audible tone occurs when you change the system speed via the keyboard. A low-pitched tone will be emitted when the system is placed into deturbo mode. A high-pitched tone will be emitted when the system is returned to normal operation.

#### D.4 SETUP METHOD

The system speed can be changed using the setup program. The system speed chosen will determine the speed used by the system each time you turn on the power.

To invoke the setup program, press  $\boxed{Crrl} + \boxed{Att} + \boxed{rrsl}$ . Press the  $\boxed{fl}$  or  $\boxed{Il}$  key to move the cursor to the CPU speed field. Press the  $\boxed{rrsl}$  or  $\boxed{Il}$  key to display the turbo or deturbo options.

Exit the setup program by pressing *Esc.* Setup will save the new system speed and reboot the system.

#### D.5 SOFTWARE METHOD

Figure D-1 lists the assembly language code needed to place the system in deturbo mode. Figure D-2 shows the code to return the system to full speed operation. Both of these programs run under DOS and can be assembled using the Microsoft Macro Assembler (MASM). Assuming that the program in Figure D-2 is contained in the file FAST.ASM, the following commands can be used to assemble the program and make it ready to run. The procedure for the program shown in Figure D-1 is analogous.

C:>masm fast, fast, fast; Microsoft (R) Macro Assembler Version 4.00 Copyright (C) Microsoft Corp 1981, 1983, 1984, 1985. All rights reserved. 50460 Bytes symbol space free 0 Warning Errors 0 Severe Errors C:>link fast; Microsoft (R) Personal Computer Linker Version 2.40 Copyright (C) Microsoft Corp 1983, 1984, 1985. All rights reserved. Warning: no stack segment C:>exe2bin fast.exe fast.com

C:>del fast.obj

C:>del fast.exe

Intel386™ MicroComputer Model 302 Board

	name	slow	
	title	'SLOW.COM puts	board into deturbo mode (emulated 8 MHz)'
cr	equ	0dh	; ASCII carriage return
lf	equ	Oah	; ASCII line feed
cmnd	equ	64h	; command register
code	segment p	public	
	org	100h	; COM file
	assume	cs:code,ds:code	
start:			
	mov	ax, cs	; set ds equal to cs
	mov	ds,ax	
	mov	al,Oeah	; value for deturbo mode
	out	cmnd,al	; write to command port
	mov	dx,offset deturbo	; tell user that
			; switch occurred
	mov	ah,9	; use DOS function 9 to
	int	21h	; print the string
	mov	ax,4c00h	; exit back to DOS with
	int	21h	; a return code of zero
deturbo db	cr,lf,'No	w running in detur	oo mode.',cr,lf,'\$'
code	ends		
end	start		

#### Figure D-1. Setting Deturbo Mode - Software Method

	name title	fast 'FAST.COM put	s board into turbo mode'	
cr lf cmnd	equ equ equ	Odh; ASCII carriage return Oah; ASCII line feed 64h; command register		
code	segment p	ublic		
	org	100h	; COM file	
	assume	cs:code,ds:code		
start:				
	mov	ax, cs	; set ds equal to cs	
	mov	ds,ax		
	mov	al,Oe5h	; value for turbo mode	
	out	cmnd,al	; write to command port	
	mov	dx,offset turbo	; tell user that ; switch occurred	
	mov	ah,9	; use DOS function 9 to	
	int	21h	; print the string	
	mov	ax,4c00h	; exit back to DOS with	
	int	21h	; a return code of zero	
turbo	db	<pre>cr,lf,'Now running in turbo mode.',cr,lf,'\$'</pre>		
code	ends			
end	start			

#### Figure D-2. Setting Turbo Mode - Software Method

# Messages

# E

# E.1 INTRODUCTION

This appendix describes the various 302 system screen messages and error beep codes. Information is grouped as follows:

- POST and boot error messages
- POST and boot informational messages
- Run-time messages
- Board errors
- Beep codes for fatal errors
- Beep codes for non-fatal errors

#### E.2 POST AND BOOT MESSAGES

The POST displays messages to indicate errors in hardware, software, or firmware, or to provide other information.

If the POST can display a message on the video display screen, it will beep the speaker twice as the message appears. However, when an error occurs before the video display is initialized, the POST cannot display messages on the screen. POST sounds a series of beeps instead.

The next two sections provide a general grouping of messages, with each group arranged in alphabetical order. Each message is accompanied by a short paragraph describing the message and a recommended solution to the problem.

Italics indicate variable parts of a message such as memory addresses. These variable parts of the message may differ at each occurrence.

#### E.2.1 POST and Boot Error Messages

Message	CACHE memory failure - Disabling CACHE - Strike
	the F1 key to continue, F2 to run the SETUP utility

- Possible Cause The cache memory is defective.
- Solution Contact your service representative.
- Message Floppy disk drive 0 seek failure

Possible Cause Drive A has either failed or is missing.

- Solution Check that drive A is present and the floppy disk is inserted properly. If they are, then drive A may have failed. If the problem persists, contact your service representative.
- MessageFloppy disk drive 1 seek failurePossible CauseDrive B has either failed or is missing.SolutionCheck that drive B is present and the floppy disk is<br/>inserted properly. If they are, then drive B may have<br/>failed. If the problem persists, contact your service<br/>representative.

Message	Floppy disk read failure - strike F1 to retry boot, F2 for SETUP utility
Possible Cause	A nonbootable or defective floppy disk, or the drive heads may need cleaning.
Solution	Replace the floppy disk with a bootable floppy disk or another copy and try again. Clean the floppy disk drive heads, if necessary.
Message	Floppy disk subsystem reset failed
Possible Cause	The floppy disk drive control cable has failed.
Solution	Check the floppy disk drive control cable. If the problem persists, contact your service representative.
Message	Display adapter failed; using alternate
Possible Cause	The video display type jumper is set incorrectly or the primary monitor controller has failed.
Solution	Check to ensure that the monitor type jumper is set correctly. Check the primary monitor controller. If the problem persists, contact your service representative.
Message	Gate A20 failure
Possible Cause	The computer cannot switch into protected mode.
Solution	Contact your service representative.
Message	Hard disk configuration error
Possible Cause	The specified configuration is incorrect.
Solution	Rerun the setup program and enter the correct fixed disk drive type number. If the problem persists, contact your service representative.

Message	Hard disk controller failure
Possible Cause	The drive controller board has failed.
Solution	Check the connections at both ends of the fixed disk control and data cables and reseat the drive controller. If the problem persists, contact your service representative.
Message	Hard disk failure or Hard disk read failure - strike F1 to retry boot, F2 for Setup utility
Possible Cause	The fixed disk is defective.
Solution	Check the system configuration and drive type, and rerun the setup program. Check the connections at both ends of the fixed disk control and data cables and reseat the drive controller. Check the fixed disk drive jumper and termination resistor. If the problem persists, contact your service representative.
Message	Hex-value optional ROM bad checksum = hex-value
Possible Cause	A peripheral board contains a defective ROM or its address conflicts with another board.
Solution	Replace the ROM or the peripheral board, or correct the address conflict. If the problem persists, contact your service representative.
Message	Invalid configuration information – please run the Setup program
Possible Cause	The memory size, the monitor/controller type, or the number of floppy disk drives is incorrect.
Solution	Check the system configuration and rerun the setup program.

Message	Keyboard clock line failure
Possible Cause	Either the keyboard or the keyboard cable connection is defective.
Solution	Check the keyboard connection. If the connection is good, the keyboard may have failed. Try running the keyboard diagnostic test. If the problem persists, contact your service representative.
Message	Keyboard controller failure
Possible Cause	The keyboard controller located on the 302 board has failed.
Solution	Contact your service representative.
Message	Keyboard data line failure
Possible Cause	Either the keyboard or the keyboard cable connection is defective.
Solution	Check the keyboard connection. If the connection is good, the keyboard may have failed. If the problem persists, contact your service representative.
Message	Keyboard is locked - please unlock - Strike the F1 key to continue, F2 to run the Setup utility
Possible Cause	The system unit keylock is locked.
Solution	Unlock the keyboard and try again. If the problem persists, contact your service representative.
Message	Keyboard stuck key failure
Possible Cause	One or more keys are pressed or stuck.
Solution	Release the key or keys and try again. If the key is still stuck, there may be debris in the keyboard. Try to shake it loose. If the problem persists, contact your service representative.

#### Note

The following seven messages have the same possible cause and solution.

Message	Memory address line failure at <i>hex-value</i> , read <i>hex-value</i> , expecting <i>hex-value</i>
Message	Memory data line failure at <i>hex-value</i> , read <i>hex-value</i> , expecting <i>hex-value</i>
Message	Memory high address line failure at <i>hex-value</i> , read <i>hex-value</i> , expecting <i>hex-value</i>
Message	Memory double word logic failure at <i>hex-value</i> , read <i>hex-value</i> , expecting <i>hex-value</i>
Message	Memory odd/even logic failure at <i>hex-value</i> , read <i>hex-value</i> , read <i>hex-value</i> , expecting <i>hex-value</i>
Message	Memory parity failure at <i>hex-value</i> , read <i>hex-value</i> , read <i>hex-value</i>
Message	Memory write/read failure at <i>hex-value</i> , read <i>hex-value</i> , expecting <i>hex-value</i>
Possible Cause	One of the SIMMs or associated circuitry has failed.
Solution	Check that all SIMMs are installed correctly.
Message	No boot device available - strike F1 to retry boot, F2 for the Setup utility
Possible Cause	If booting from a floppy disk, it is nonbootable or defective, or the floppy disk drive is defective. If booting from a fixed disk, it may not be formatted as a system disk or is defective. The problem could also be in the drive controller board.
Solution	Make sure that the floppy disk in drive A or the fixed disk contains an operating system. Check the connections at both ends of the fixed disk control and data cables and reseat the drive controller. If the problem persists, contact your service representative.

Message	No boot sector on hard disk - strike F1 to retry boot, F2 for the Setup utility
Possible Cause	The fixed disk does not contain an operating system.
Solution	Format the disk with the /S option

# **CAUTION**

This procedure will destroy data on the disk. Refer to your MS-DOS Operations Reference Manual for instructions.

Message	No timer tick interrupt
Possible Cause	The timer chip on the 302 board may have failed.
Solution	Contact your service representative.
Message	Not a boot floppy disk - strike F1 to retry boot, F2 for the Setup utility
Possible Cause	The floppy disk in drive A is not formatted as a system floppy disk.
Solution	Replace the floppy disk with a bootable system floppy disk and try again.
Message	Shadow of System BIOS failed - Executing from ROM - Strike the F1 key to continue, F2 to run the Setup utility
Possible Cause	The system RAM is defective.
Solution	Check the installation of the SIMMs.

Message	Shadow of Video BIOS failed - Executing from ROM - Strike the F1 key to continue, F2 to run the Setup utility
Possible Cause	The system RAM is defective or the video BIOS cannot be shadowed.
Solution	Check the installation of all SIMMs. Rerun the setup program and turn video BIOS shadow off.
Message	Shutdown failure
Possible Cause	The keyboard controller or its associated logic has failed.
Solution	Contact your service representative.
Message	Time-of-day clock stopped
Possible Cause	The integral battery in the RTC is probably dead.
Solution	Contact your service representative.
Message	Time-of-day not set - Please run the Setup program
Possible Cause	The date and time information is not set in the RTC.
Solution	Run the setup program and set the date and time.

Message	Timer chip counter 2 failed
Possible Cause	The PIT on the 302 board may have failed.
Solution	Contact your service representative.
Message	Timer or interrupt controller bad
Possible Cause	The PIT or the PICs on the 302 board may have failed.
Solution	Contact your service representative.
Message	Unexpected interrupt in protected mode
Possible Cause	The system received an interrupt when in protected mode, probably while testing memory.
Solution	Contact your service representative.

# E.2.2 POST and Boot Information Messages

These messages do not indicate error conditions.

Message	Hex-value Base Memory
Meaning	Indicates the amount of base memory that has been tested successfully.

- Message Hex-value extended
- Meaning Indicates the amount of extended memory that has been tested successfully.

Message	Decreasing available memory
Meaning	This message immediately follows any memory error message, informing you that memory modules are failing. Check that all SIMMs are installed correctly. Check expansion board memory (if installed), and check the SIMM jumpers on the 302 board.
Message	Memory test terminated by keystroke
Meaning	The spacebar was pressed during the memory test. Reboot the system if you want to rerun the self-test.
Message	Strike the F1 key to continue, F2 to run the Setup utility
Meaning	The self-test detected an error prior to boot. Pressing Fill lets the computer try to boot. Pressing Fill runs the setup program.

# E.3 RUN-TIME MESSAGES

Message	I/O card parity interrupt at address <i>hex-value</i> . Type (S)hut off NMI, (R)eboot, other keys to continue
Possible Cause	A peripheral board has failed.
Solution	Type S to shut off the nonmaskable interrupt (NMI). This will temporarily allow you to continue. If the problem persists, contact your service representative.
Message	Memory parity interrupt at address <i>hex-value</i> . Type (S)hut off NMI, (R)eboot, other keys to continue
Possible Cause	One or more memory modules has failed.
Solution	Type S to shut off the nonmaskable interrupt (NMI). This will temporarily allow you to continue. Check the installation of all SIMMs. If the problem persists, contact your service representative.
Message	Unexpected HW interrupt at address <i>hex-value</i> . Type (R)eboot, other keys to continue
Possible Cause	This could be any hardware-related problem.
Solution	Recheck all cables, connections, jumpers, and boards. If the problem persists, contact your service representative.
Message	Unexpected SW interrupt at address <i>hex-value</i> . Type (R)eboot, other keys to continue.
Possible Cause	There is an error in the software program.
Solution	Try turning the computer off and then on again. If the problem persists, contact your software manufacturer's representative.

#### E.4 302 BOARD ERRORS

If the POST finds an error and cannot display a message, the system emits a series of beeps to indicate the error and places a value in I/O port 80H.

For example, a failure of bit 3 in the first 64K of RAM is indicated by a 2-1-4 beep code (a burst of two beeps, a single beep, and a burst of four beeps).

Tables E-1 and E-2 list the beep codes and I/O the values that the POST writes to I/O port 80H when it encounters error conditions. Table E-1 lists fatal errors (errors that halt the system). Table E-2 lists the non-fatal errors (errors that are not serious enough to halt the system). The tables also list other conditions that have no beep codes.

In addition to the codes listed in the tables, a long beep followed by one or more short beeps indicates a monitor controller failure. No beep code is sounded if a test is aborted in progress. Many beep codes indicate problems which can only be solved by replacing or repairing boards or other system components.

	<b>A</b>	
Beep Code	Description of Error	Contents of I/O Port 80H
none	386 register test in progress	01H
1-1-3	Real-time clock write/read failure	02H
1-1-4	ROM BIOS checksum failure	03H
1-2-1	Programmable interval timer failure	04H
1-2-2	DMA initialization failure	05H
1-2-3	DMA page register write/read failure	06H
1-3-1	RAM refresh verification failure	08H
none	1st 64K RAM test in progress	09H
1-3-3	1st 64K RAM chip or data line failure multi-bit	0AH
1-3-4	1st 64K RAM odd/even logic failure	0BH
1-4-1	1st 64K RAM address line failure	0CH
1-4-2	1st 64K RAM parity test in progress or failure	0DH
2-1-1	Bit 0 1st 64K RAM failure	10H
2-1-2	Bit 1 1st 64K RAM failure	11H
2-1-3	Bit 2 1st 64K RAM failure	12H
2-1-4	Bit 3 1st 64K RAM failure	13H
2-2-1	Bit 4 1st 64K RAM failure	14H
2-2-2	Bit 5 1st 64K RAM failure	15H
2-2-3	Bit 6 1st 64K RAM failure	16H
2-2-4	Bit 7 1st 64K RAM failure	17H
2-3-1	Bit 8 1st 64K RAM failure	18H
2-3-2	Bit 9 1st 64K RAM failure	19H
2-3-3	Bit A 1st 64K RAM failure	1AH
2-3-4	Bit B 1st 64K RAM failure	1BH
2-4-1	Bit C 1st 64K RAM failure	1CH
2-4-2	Bit D 1st 64K RAM failure	1DH
2-4-3	Bit E 1st 64K RAM failure	1EH
2-4-4	Bit F 1st 64K RAM failure	1FH

 Table E-1.
 Beep Codes for Fatal Errors

(continued)

Beep Code	Description of Error	Contents of I/O Port 80H
3-1-1 3-1-2 3-1-3 3-1-4 none 3-2-4 none	Slave DMA register failure Master DMA register failure Master interrupt mask register failure Slave interrupt mask register failure Interrupt vector loading in progress Keyboard controller test failure Real-time clock power failure or checksum failure	20H 21H 22H 23H 25H 27H 28H

Table E-1.         Beep Codes for Fatal Errors (continued)
--

#### Table E-2. Beep Codes for Non-fatal Errors

Beep Code	Description of Error	Contents of I/O Port 80H
none	Real-time clock configuration	29H
3-3-4	Screen memory test failure	2BH
3-4-1	Screen initialization failure	2CH
3-4-2	Screen retrace test failure	2DH
none	Search for video ROM in progress	2EH
none	Screen running with video ROM	30H
none	Monochrome display operable	31H
none	Color display (40 column) operable	32H
none	Color display (80 column) operable	33H

# **Device Mapping**

# F

# F.1 INTRODUCTION

This appendix provides a series of tables listing mapping and address information related to system memory and onboard devices. Topics presented include:

- System memory map
- I/O addresses
  - Control port bit assignments (61H)
  - Auxiliary control port bit assignments (78H and 79H)
- Interrupt priority levels
- DMA controller channel assignments
- Real-time clock map

You can find detailed information concerning the topics discussed in this appendix in other sections of this manual.

# F.2 SYSTEM MEMORY MAP

Table F-1.	Memory	Address Map	

Address	Name	Function
000000:09FFFFH	512K system board	302 board memory (0 - 640K)
0A0000:0BFFFFH	128K video RAM	Reserved for video display controller.
0C0000:0C7FFFH	32K video ROM	Reserved for video display controller, BIOS ROM, and video BIOS ROM shadow.
0C8000:0DFFFFH	96K I/O expansion ROM/RAM	Reserved for ROM and RAM on I/O adapters.
0E0000:0FFFFFH	128K system ROM BIOS/shadow RAM	Reserved for system ROM BIOS & shadow of system and video ROM BIOS
100000:FDFFFH	Extended memory	Extended Memory space
FE0000:FFFFFFH	128K reserved on 302 board	Duplicates code assignment at address 0E0000H.
1000000:FFFFFFFH	Extended Memory	Extended Memory space.

If operating with the 16M option in the setup program enabled, expansion RAM starts at 1000000H and goes to FFFFFFH. There is no duplication at FE0000:FEFFFFH. The setup program provides this memory addressing option.

# F.3 I/O ADDRESSES

Table F-2 lists the I/O locations that are addressable from the ISA bus. The 302 board provides three control ports directly on the ISA bus. These ports are described following Table F-2.

Range	Device
000H-01FH	DMA controller-1, 8237, for 8-bit device
020H-3FH	Interrupt controller-1, 8259, master PIC
040H-5FH	System timer, PIT 8254
060H, 064H	Keyboard controller, 8742
61H 70H	Control port (bits described in Table F-3)
70H 70H-71H	NMI mask (bit 7) Real-time clock
70H-71H 78H-79H	Auxiliary control ports (described in
701-7311	Tables F-4 and F-5)
080H-08FH,	DMA page registers, 74LS612
480H-48FH	
0A0H-0BFH	Interrupt controller-2, 8259, slave PIC
0C0H-0DFH	DMA controller-2, 8237
OFOH	Clear numeric coprocessor BUSY
0F8H-0FFH	Numeric coprocessor
1F0H-1F8H 200H-207H	Fixed disk controller Game I/O port
200H-207H 278H-27FH	Parallel printer port 2 (LPT2)
2F8H-2FFH	Serial port 2 (COM2)
378H-37FH	Parallel printer port 1 (LPT1)
3B0H-3BFH	Monochrome display/printer port
3C0H-3CFH	Enhanced graphics controller
3D0H-3DFH	Color/graphics controller
3F0H-3F7H	Floppy disk drive controller
3F8H-3FFH	Serial port 1 (COM1)
400H-44FH	Multi-terminal adapter board
	Video display controller
4BC4H-4BC5H 56E8H	Video display controller
66E8H	Video display controller Video display controller
76E8H	Video display controller
102011	

Table F-2. I/O Address Map

I/O address 61H is an 8-bit control port. Table F-3 lists the 61H bit assignments.

Bit/Value	Function	Access
Bit 7 1 0	AT32 parity error Parity error No parity error	Read only
Bit 6 1 0	ISA parity error Parity error No parity error	Read only
Bit 5 1 0	Speaker signal Speaker on Speaker off	Read only
Bit 4	Refresh signal The refresh signal toggles with each refresh	Read only
Bit 3 1 0	Enable ISA parity error Parity error disabled Parity error enabled	R/W
Bit 2 1 0	Enable AT32 memory parity error Parity error disabled Parity error enabled	R/W
Bit 1 1 0	Speaker data Speaker data on Speaker data off	R/W
Bit 0 1 0	Enable speaker Speaker enabled Speaker disabled	R/W

 Table F-3.
 I/O Address 61H Bit Assignment

 $\ensuremath{\text{I/O}}$  address 78H is an 8-bit auxiliary control port. Table F-4 lists the 78H bit assignments.

Bit/Value	Function	Access
Bit 7 1 0	Force memory parity error Force bad parity Normal operation	R/W
Bit 6 1 0	Cache misses Enable cache Force cache misses	R/W
Bit 5:4 00 10 01 11	Video and system BIOS Normal operation; neither shadowed Downloading video BIOS to RAM Only system BIOS shadowed Both system and video BIOS shadowed	R/W
Bit 3	Reserved	
Bit 2 1 0	A20 enabled Gate A20 enabled Gate A20 disabled	R/W
Bit 1 1 0	AT32 I/O AT32 I/O enabled ISA I/O enabled	R/W
Bit 0	Reserved	

 Table F-4.
 I/O Address 78H Bit Assignments
$\ensuremath{\text{I/O}}$  address 79H is an eight bit auxiliary control port. Table F-5 lists the 79H bit assignments.

Bit/Value	Function	Access
Bit 7 1 0	BIOS ROM at 16M Memory fill BIOS ROM at 16M enabled	R/W
Bit 6 1 0	Secondary enable speaker (In addition to port 61H bit 0) Speaker disabled Speaker enabled	R/W
Bit 4:0	Reserved	
Bit 5 1 0	Deturbo mode Deturbo (8 MHz CPU emulation Normal (turbo)	R/W

Table F-5.	I/O Address 79H Bit Assignments	
------------	---------------------------------	--

# F.4 INTERRUPT PRIORITY LEVELS

Table F-6 lists the interrupt priority assignments for the system.

Priority	PIC No.	Int No.	Interrupt Source
1	†	NMI	Parity error detected
2	1	IRQ0	Interval timer (PIT), counter 0 output
3	1	IRQ1	Full keyboard output buffer
	1	IRQ2	Interrupt from controller 2 (cascade)
4	2	IRQ8	Real-time clock INT
5	2	IRQ9	Software redirected to INT 0AH (IRQ2)
6	2	IRQ10	Reserved
7	2	IRQ11	Reserved
8	2	IRQ12	Auxiliary device
9	2	IRQ13	INT from coprocessor
10	2	IRQ14	Fixed disk controller
11	2	IRQ15	Reserved
12	1	IRQ3	COM2
13	1	IRQ4	COM1 (primary)
14	1	IRQ5	LPT2
15	1	IRQ6	Floppy disk controller
16	1	IRQ7	LPT1 (primary)

Table F-6.Interrupt Levels

† I/O address 70H, bit 7, controls the NMI signal.

There is always the possibility that more than two interrupts will demand servicing at the same time. The PICs determine the priority of each interrupt and process the requests one at a time by transferring the control of the CPU to the higher priority service routine first.

## F.5 DMA CHANNEL ASSIGNMENTS

Each DMA controller has four ports, DMA(4:1). DMA1 supports channels zero through three (for 8-bit transfers) and DMA2 supports channels four through seven (for 16-bit transfers). Channel four is used to cascade from DMA2 to DMA1. All HOLD requests for DMA1 are processed via DMA2, channel four. This forces all channels in DMA1 to operate at a higher priority than those in DMA2. Channel zero has the highest priority and channel seven the lowest. DMA channels 0-3 are 8-bit channels and DMA channels 5-7 are 16-bit channels. Table 8-1 lists each channel's function.

Channel	Controller	Function
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7	1 1 1 2 2 2 2	Refresh Streaming tape (typical) Disk (floppy) Spare Cascade Spare Spare Spare Spare

Table F-7. DMA Channel Assignment

#### F.6 RTC MAPPING

The 64 addressable locations in the RTC are divided into ten bytes containing the time, calendar, alarm data, four control and status bytes, and 50 general purpose RAM bytes as listed in Table F-8. Table F-8 also details the internal register/RAM organization of the RTC.

Function	Index
Time, Calendar, and Alarm Bytes Seconds register Seconds alarm register Minutes register Hours register Hours alarm register Day of week register Date of month register Month register Year register	00H 01H 02H 03H 04H 05H 06H 07H 08H 09H
Status Registers Status register A Status register B Status register C Status register D	OAH OBH OCH ODH
General Configuration Bytes Diagnostic status byte Shutdown status byte Floppy disk drive type byte Reserved Fixed disk type byte Reserved Equipment byte Low base memory byte High base memory byte Low expansion memory byte Drive C extended type byte Drive D extended type byte Reserved Features installed byte Drive type 48 parameters byte	0EH 0FH 10H 11H 12H 13H 14H 15H 16H 17H 18H 19H 1AH 1BH-1EH 1FH 20H-27H 28H

Table F-8. RTC Address Map

(continued)

Function	Index
Reserved	29H-2DH
2-byte CMOS RAM checksum byte	2EH-2FH
Low extended memory byte	30H
High extended memory byte	31H
Date century byte	32H
Setup information byte	33H
System speed byte	34H
Drive type 49 parameters byte	35H-3CH
Reserved	3DH-3FH

Table F-8.	<b>Real-time</b>	<b>Clock Address</b>	Map	(continued)
------------	------------------	----------------------	-----	-------------

# intel

# Hot Keys

# G

This appendix lists the "hot keys." Hot keys are keystroke sequences used to invoke special 302 system functions. Note that in these descriptions, all numbers refer to numeric pad keys.

<u>Keystroke sequence</u>	Function
	Enter ROM-based setup program.
	Enter ROM-based setup program.
Ctrl + Att + 1	Set deturbo mode. CPU emulates 8 MHz CPU.
<u>Ctrl</u> + <u>Ait</u> + 2	Set turbo mode. CPU runs at 25 MHz.

# Pin Assignments for Major Signals



# H.1 INTRODUCTION

This appendix provides pin assignments for all major signals present in the 302 system.

# H.2 CPU PIN ASSIGNMENTS

Table H-1 lists the connector pinouts for the CPU. The pinouts are listed in functional groups.

Pin/Signal	Pin/Signal	Pin/Signal	Pin/Signal
N2 A31 P1 A30 M2 A29 L3 A28 N1 A27 M1 A26 K3 A25 L2 A24 L1 A23 K2 A22	M5D31P3D30P4D29M6D28N5D27P5D26N6D25P7D24N8D23P9D22	$\begin{array}{ccc} A1 & V_{\rm CC} \\ A5 & V_{\rm CC} \\ A7 & V_{\rm CC} \\ A10 & V_{\rm CC} \\ A14 & V_{\rm CC} \\ C5 & V_{\rm CC} \\ C12 & V_{\rm CC} \\ D12 & V_{\rm CC} \\ G2 & V_{\rm CC} \\ G3 & V_{\rm CC} \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{ccc} A2 & V_{SS} \\ A6 & V_{SS} \\ A9 & V_{SS} \\ B1 & V_{SS} \\ B5 & V_{SS} \\ B11 & V_{SS} \\ B14 & V_{SS} \\ C11 & V_{SS} \\ F2 & V_{SS} \\ F3 & V_{SS} \end{array}$

Table H-1. CPU Pin Assignments

(continued)

Pin/S	ignal	Pin/S	Signal	Pin/S	Signal	Pin/S	Signal
K1	A21	N9	D21	G12	V <sub>cc</sub>	F14	V <sub>ss</sub>
J1	A20	M9	D20	G14	V <sub>cc</sub>	J2	V <sub>SS</sub>
НЗ	A19	P10	D19	L12	V <sub>cc</sub>	J3	V <sub>SS</sub>
H2	A18	P11	D18	МЗ	V <sub>cc</sub>	J12	V <sub>ss</sub>
H1	A17	N10	D17	M7	V <sub>cc</sub>	J13	V <sub>SS</sub>
G1	A16	N11	D16	M13	V <sub>cc</sub>	M4	V <sub>SS</sub>
F1	A15	M11	D15	N4	V <sub>cc</sub>	M8	V <sub>ss</sub>
E1	A14	P12	D14	N7	V <sub>cc</sub>	M10	V <sub>ss</sub>
E2	A13	P13	D13	P2	V <sub>cc</sub>	N3	V <sub>SS</sub>
E3	A12.	N12	D12	P8	V <sub>cc</sub>	P6	V <sub>SS</sub>
D1	A11	N13	D11			P14	V <sub>ss</sub>
D2	A10	M12	D10				00
D3	A9	N14	D9	F12	CLK2	A4	N.C.
C1	A8	L13	D6			B4	N.C.
C2	A7	K12	D7	E14	ADS*	B6	N.C.
C3	A6	L14	D6			B12	N.C.
B2	A5	K13	D5	B10	W/R*	C6	N.C.
B3	A4	K14	D4	A11	D/C*	C7	N.C.
A3	A3	J14	D3	A12	M/10*	E13	N.C.
	A2	H14	D2	C10	LOCK*	F13	N.C.
A13	BE3*	H13	D1				
B13	BE2*	H12	D0	D13	NA*	C8	PEREQ
	BE1*			C14	BS16*	B9	BUSY*
E12	BE0*			G13	READY*	A8	ERROR*
		D14	HOLD				
C19	RESET	M14	HLDA	B7	INTR	B8	NMI

 Table H-1.
 CPU Pin Assignments (continued)

# H.3 AT32 BUS PIN ASSIGNMENTS

Table H-2 lists the pin assignments for the AT32 bus.

Pin	Component Side	Non- Component Side	Pin	Component Side	Non- Component Side
1	GND	5VDC	23	YA3	YA2
2	YD0	YD1	24	YA5	YA4
3	YD2	YD3	25	YA7	YA6
4	YD4	YD5	26	YA9	YA8
5	YD6	YD7	27	GND	YA10
6	YD8	YD9	28	YA11	YA12
7	YD10	YD11	29	YA13	YA14
7 8 9 10	YD10 YD12 YD14 GND	YD13 YD15 5VDC	29 30 31 32	YA13 YA15 YA25 YA27	YA14 YA16 YA24 YA26
11	YD16	YD17	33	YSELn* <sup>†</sup>	GND
12	YD18	YD19	34	YLOCK*	YASTB*
13	YD20	YD21	35	YMIO*	YCASSTB*
14	YD22	YD23	36	YRSRQ*	YWR*
15	YD24	YD25	37	YRSP0	YRSP1
16	YD26	YD27	38	YCACHEN*	YPSIZE
17	YD28	YD29	39	YSPD1*	YSPD0*
18	YD30	YD31	40	GND	5VDC
19 20 21 22	GND Reserved YBE1* YBE3*	5VDC Reserved YBE0* YBE2*	41 42 43	YRDY YPARERR* YPARFRC	YREQn* <sup>†</sup> YPRYn* <sup>†</sup> YGNTn* <sup>†</sup>

Table H-2. AT32 Bus Connector Pin Assignments

<sup>†</sup> The AT32 bus signals with a lower case n following the signal name are connected to only one expansion connector (numbered n). All signals without an n suffix are bussed to all AT32 bus expansion connectors.

# H.4 ISA BUS PIN ASSIGNMENTS

These are the pin assignments looking down onto the top (open card-receiving side) of the connectors. Table H-3 lists the pin assignments for the 8-bit slot.

Pin No.	Signal	Pin No.	Signal
B1	Ground	A1	IOCHCK*
B2	RSTDEV	A2	D07
B3	5V	A3	D06
B4	IRQ09	A4	D05
B5	-5V	A5	D04
B6	DRQ2	A6	D03
B7	-12V	A7	D02
B8	SRDY*	A8	D01
B9	12V	A9	D00
B10	Ground	A10	IOCHRDY
B11	MEMW*	A11	AEN
B12	MEMR*	A12	A19
B13	IOWC*	A13	A18
B14	IORC*	A14	A17
B15	DACK3*	A15	A16
B16	DRQ3	A16	A15
B17	DACK1*	A17	A14
B18	DRQ1	A18	A13
B19	MEMREF*	A19	A12
B20	SYSCLK	A20	A11
B21	IRQ07	A21	A10
B22	IRQ06	A22	A09
B23	IRQ05	A23	A08
B24	IRQ04	A24	A07
B25	IRQ03	A25	A06
B26	DACK2*	A26	A05
B27	TC	A27	A04
B28	BUSALE	A28	A03
B29	5V	A29	A02
B30	84OSC	A30	A01
B31	Ground	A31	A00

Table H-3. ISA Bus 8-bit Connector Pin Assigments

Table H-4 lists the pin assignments for the 16-bit slot.

Pin No.	Signal	Pin No.	Signal
D1	MCS16*	C1	SBHE*
D2	IOCS16*	C2	LA23
D3	IRQ10	C3	LA22
D4	IRQ11	C4	LA21
D5	IRQ12	C5	LA20
D6	IRQ15	C6	LA19
D7	IRQ14	C7	LA18
D8	DACK0*	C8	LA17
D9	DRQ0	C9	MRDC*
D10	DACK5*	C10	MWTC*
D11	DRQ5	C11	D08
D12	DACK6*	C12	D09
D13	DRQ6	C13	D10
D14	DACK7*	C14	D11
D15	DRQ7	C15	D12
D16	5V	C16	D13
D17	SECMAST*	C17	D14
D18	Ground	C18	D15

 Table H-4.
 ISA Bus 16-bit Connector Pin Assignments

Δ

# H.5 SERIAL COMMUNICATIONS PORT PINOUTS

The pin assignments for header J5 (9-pin versions of COM1 and COM2) are listed in Tables H-5 and H-6.

J5 Pin No.	DB9 Pin No.	Signal/Function
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 23 24	1 6 2 7 3 8 4 9 5 -	DCD/carrier detect DSR/data set ready RXD/receive data RTS/request to send TXD/transmit data CTS/clear to send DTR/data terminal ready RI/ring indicator Ground Key (pin missing) MGTEST*/mfg. test

 Table H-5.
 Nine-pin Serial Port (COM1) Connector Pin Assignments

Table H-6.	Nine-pin Serial Port	(COM2) Connector Pin Assignments
------------	----------------------	----------------------------------

J5 Pin No.	DB9 Pin No.	Signal/Function
10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 23 24	1 6 2 7 3 8 4 9 5 -	DCD/data carrier detect DSR/data set ready RXD/receive data RTS/request to send TXD/transmit data CTS/clear to send DTR/data terminal ready RI/ring indicator Ground Key (pin missing) MGTEST*/mfg. test

 $\Lambda$ 

The pinout assignments for header J6 (25-pin version of COM2) is listed in Table H-7.

J6 Pin No.	DB25 Pin No.	Signal/Function
15	-	DCD/data carrier detect
11	6	DSR/data set ready
5	3	RXD/receive data
7	4	RTS/request to send
3	2	TXD/transmit data
9	5	CTS/clear to send
14	20	DTR/data terminal ready
18	22	RI/ring indicator
13	7	Ground
24	25	MGTEST*/mfg. test
23	-	Key (pin missing)

Table H-7. 25-pin Serial Port (COM2) Connector Pin Assignment

# H.6 PARALLEL PRINTER PORT PINOUT

The pin assignment for the parallel printer connector is shown in Table H-8.

J4 Pin No.	DB25 Pin No.	36-Pin Ribbon Cable Pin No.	Signal/Function
1	1	1	STROBE*
3	2	2	PRTD0/data bit 0
5	3	3	PRTD1/data bit 1
7	4	4	PRTD2/data bit 2
9	5	5	PRTD3/data bit 3
11	6	6	PRTD4/data bit 4
13	7	7	PRTD5/data bit 5
15	8	8	PRTD6/data bit 6
17	9	9	PRTD7/data bit 7
19	10	10	ACK*/acknowledge
21	11	11	BUSY
23	12	12	PE/paper end
25	13	13	SLCT/select
2	14	14	AUTOFDXT*/auto feed
4	15	32	ERROR*
6	16	31	INIT*/initializing printer
8	17	36	SLCTIN*/select input
10,12,14,	18-25	19-30,33	Ground
16,18,22,24			
-	-	17	Chassis ground
20	-	-	Key (pin missing)
26	-	-	No connection

 Table H-8.
 Parallel Printer Port Connector Pin Assignments

# H.7 KEYBOARD PINOUT

Table H-9 lists the pinout for the keyboard connector.

Pin #	Signal	Signal Type
1 2 3 4 5 6	KBD CLK KBD DATA Reset Ground 5.0VDC Frame ground	Input/output Input/output Output Signal ground Power

 Table H-9.
 Keyboard Connector Pin Assignment

# **Component Installation**



# I.1 INTRODUCTION

This appendix describes how to install and remove SIMMs and the 387 numeric coprocessor on the 302 board.

# I.2 INSTALLING SIMMS

Installing SIMMs requires inserting two modules each in sockets J16 and J17. For each socket, insert the first SIMM into the left-hand slot and the second SIMM into the right-hand slot. To install SIMMs, perform the following:



# CAUTION

Do not touch any electronic component unless you are properly grounded. Proper grounding can be established by wearing a grounded wrist strap or touching an exposed metal part of the system module chassis. A static discharge from your fingers can result in permanent damage to electronic components.



# CAUTION

Use extreme care when installing SIMMs. The plastic retaining clips on the sockets are easily broken by using too much force.

- 1. Holding the SIMM by the edges only, remove it from the antistatic package.
- Position the SIMM correctly (see Figure I-1) and insert the bottom edge into the socket slot, beginning with the empty slot farthest to the left. Press down firmly while maintaining the angle of insertion.
- 3. Make sure the SIMM seats correctly. If not, gently spread the retaining clips just enough to permit the top edge of the SIMM to be pulled away from the clips. Reseat the SIMM.
- 4. When the SIMM seats correctly, hold it at each end, and gently push the top edge toward the slot retaining clips until it snaps into place.
- 5. Repeat steps one through four and install the remaining SIMMs into the socket slots, working from left to right.



#### Figure I-1. Installing SIMMs

# I.3 REMOVING SIMMS

Use the following procedure to remove SIMMs from the 302 board.

When removing SIMMs, remove them one at a time from right to left. That is, remove the right-hand SIMM first, and the left-hand SIMM last.



# CAUTION

Apply only enough pressure on the retaining clips to release the SIMM. Too much pressure can break the retaining clips or damage the socket slot.



# CAUTION

Do not touch any electronic component unless you are properly grounded. Proper grounding can be established by wearing a grounded wrist strap or touching an exposed metal part of the system module chassis. A static discharge from your fingers can result in permanent damage to electronic components.

To remove a SIMM:

- 1. Locate the SIMM in the right-hand slot of the right-most socket of the group to be removed (see Figure I-2).
- 2. Gently spread the retaining clips just enough to pull the top edge of the SIMM away from the retaining clips.
- 3. Carefully lift the SIMM away from the socket and store it in a suitable static-free protective wrapper.
- 4. Repeat steps two and three, as necessary, to remove the remaining SIMMs.



## Figure I-2. Removing SIMMs

I.4

# INSTALLING A NUMERIC COPROCESSOR

# CAUTION

Do not touch any electronic component unless you are properly grounded. Proper grounding can be established by wearing a grounded wrist strap or touching an exposed metal part of the system module chassis. A static discharge from your fingers can result in permanent damage to electronic components.



С

#### CAUTION

Be sure to orient the beveled corner of the numeric coprocessor with the beveled cutout in the socket center. Failure to install the numeric coprocessor correctly may destroy the component and could damage the 302 board.

The numeric coprocessor plugs directly into the socket on the board (see Figure I-1). Follow these procedures to install the numeric coprocessor:

- 1. Remove the numeric coprocessor from its antistatic package, being careful not to touch the pins on the chip.
- 2. Align the numeric coprocessor's pins with the socket contacts.
- Position the numeric coprocessor's pins in the socket receptacle. Press the chip down firmly until it seats (see Figure I-3). Be careful not to bend the pins.



Figure I-3. Installing a Numeric Coprocessor

#### I.5 **REMOVING A NUMERIC COPROCESSOR**

Use the following procedures to remove the numeric coprocessor from the 302 board:



# CAUTION

Do not touch any electronic component unless you are properly grounded. Proper grounding can be established by wearing a grounded wrist strap or touching an exposed metal part of the system module chassis. A static discharge from your fingers can result in permanent damage to electronic components.

- 1. Remove the numeric coprocessor from its socket on the 302 board (see Figure 1-1) using a grid-array device removal tool. Be careful not to touch the device pins.
- 2. Place the numeric coprocessor in an antistatic container to protect the device from static electricity.

# Glossary

# A

#### A

Ampere.

#### AC

Alternating current. A current that periodically reverses its direction of flow.

#### accuracy

In scientific measurements, accuracy is the degree of conformity to an absolute standard. For example, a specification of  $+5V \pm 10\%$ , signifies how accurate +5V is with respect to the absolute volt as defined by the U.S. National Bureau of Standards or other governing standards organizations. Do not confuse accuracy with precision. Contrast with precision.

#### active high

Designates a signal that has to go high to produce an effect.

#### active low

Designates a signal that has to go low to produce an effect.

#### adapter

- 1. An auxiliary device or unit used to extend the operation of another system.
- 2. An electronic part used to connect two dissimilar parts or machines.

#### address

- 1. A name, label, or number identifying a location in storage, a device in a network, or any other data source.
- 2. A number that identifies the location of data in memory.

#### address bus

One or more conductors used to carry the binary-coded address from the processor throughout the rest of the system.

#### algorithm

A finite set of well-defined rules for the solution of a problem in a finite number of steps.

#### ampere(A)

The basic unit of electric current.

#### analog

Pertaining to data in the form of continuously variable physical quantities. Contrast with digital.

#### application

A program or set of programs used to do work on the computer. Some categories of application programs are word processors, database managers, spreadsheet managers, and project managers. Specific examples of application programs are MultiMate, dBase III PLUS, Lotus 1-2-3, Framework II, and Symphony.

#### array

An arrangement of elements in one or more dimensions.

#### ASCII

American Standard Code for Information Interchange. The code developed by ANSI for information interchange among data processing systems, data communications systems, and associated equipment. The ASCII character set consists of 7-bit control characters and symbolic characters.

#### asynchronous

In data communications, a method of transmission in which the bits included in a character or block of characters occur during a specific time interval. However, the start of each character or block of characters can occur at any time during this interval. Contrast with synchronous.

#### AUTOEXEC.BAT

A special-purpose batch file. When you turn on your computer, or restart it by pressing the  $\boxed{Ctrl}$  +  $\boxed{Pel}$  combination, DOS searches the system disk for the AUTOEXEC.BAT file. If DOS finds one, it executes the commands in the file.

# B

#### base address

The beginning address for resolving symbolic references to locations in storage.

#### base memory

Up to 640K of memory accessible to DOS. This is also referred to as conventional memory. Contrast with expanded memory and extended memory.

#### base register

A general purpose register that the programmer chooses to contain a base address.

#### BASIC

A programming language that uses common English words.

#### basic input/output system

The feature of a computer that provides a basic level of control of the major I/O devices, and relieves programmers of having to learn about system hardware device characteristics.

See BIOS.

#### batch file

A file that saves time and effort and which is identified by the .BAT extension following the file name. If you use a sequence of DOS commands frequently, you can create a batch file containing the commands, and then execute the entire sequence by typing the name of the file. This reduces the number of keystrokes needed to execute a sequence of commands.

#### binary

- 1. Involving a a choice of two conditions, such as on-off or yes-no.
- 2. Pertaining to a fixed radix numeration system having a radix of 2, wherein the binary digits are 0 and 1.

#### BIOS

The feature of a computer that provides a basic level of control of the major I/O devices, and relieves programmers of having to learn about system hardware device characteristics.

Acronym for basic input/output system.

#### bit

Synonym for binary digit. Either of the binary digits 0 or 1 used in computers to store information. (see also byte)

#### bits per second (bps)

A unit of measurement representing the number of discrete binary digits transmitted by a device in one second.

#### board

A rectangular piece of fiberglass that has pins on one side and electronic parts on the other; also called a card, PC board or PCB (printed circuit board). The system is always supplied with a board. Other boards can include a video adapter board, a disk controller board, a network communication board, memory boards, and multifunction boards.

#### boot

(see bootstrap)

#### bootstrap

A technique or device designed to bring itself into a desired state by means of its own action; for example, a machine routine whose first few instructions are sufficient to bring the rest of itself into the computer from an input device. For example, a computer that runs DOS boots itself by causing the computer to read the first few of its instructions from disk. Those instructions are sufficient to read in the rest of DOS from disk.

#### bps

Bits per second.

#### buffer

- 1. An area of storage that is temporarily reserved for use in performing an input/output operation into which data is written or from which data is read. Synonymous with I/O area.
- 2. A portion of memory storage for temporarily holding input or output data.

#### bus

One or more conductors used for transmitting signals or power.

#### byte

- 1. A sequence of eight adjacent binary digits that are operated upon as a unit.
- 2. A binary character operated upon as a unit.
- 3. The amount of storage used to represent one character.

# С

#### С

- 1. Celsius (centigrade).
- 2. A programming language.

#### cache memory

A small, high-speed memory block that improves CPU performance by minimizing the number of memory accesses on the bus. This action is accomplished by storing the CPU's most recently used data/instructions in the cache memory rather than main memory.

#### card

(see Board)

#### CAS

Column address strobe; a signal that latches the column addresses in a memory chip.

#### Cathode ray tube (CRT)

A vacuum tube in which a stream of electrons is projected onto a fluorescent screen producing a luminous spot. The location of the spot can be controlled. A CRT is the main element in a video display or monitor.

#### Celsius (C)

A temperature scale; also called Centigrade. Contrast with Fahrenheit .

#### Central processing unit (CPU)

Term for processing unit; i.e. 80386.

#### CFR Part 15 Subpart J

Federal Communications Commission Specification for EMI suppression.

#### channel

A path along which signals can be sent; for example, data channel, output channel.

#### character

A letter, digit, or other symbol.

#### character generator

- 1. In computer graphics, a functional unit that converts the coded representation of a graphics character into the shape of the character for display.
- 2. In word processing, the means within equipment for generating visual characters or symbols from coded sets.

#### character key

A keyboard key that allows the user to enter the character shown on the key. Compare with function key.

#### character set

A group of characters used for a specific reason; for example, the set of characters a printer can print or a keyboard can support.

#### **Class A device**

Broadly defined, a Class A device complies with the various regulatory agencies that certify equipment for operation in a commercial (office or factory) environment.

#### **Class B device**

Broadly defined, a Class B device complies with the various regulatory agencies that certify equipment for operation in a home or residential environment.

#### CMOS

Complementary metal oxide semiconductor. A logic circuit family that uses very little power. It works with a wide range of power supply voltages.

#### COM1, COM2, COM3, COM4

These are the names DOS assigns to the serial communications port(s). Some systems only provide one serial port; others provide two.

#### **CONFIG.SYS** file

A special-purpose file that provides DOS with information about the special kinds of hardware or software used with the computer. Whenever the computer is turned on or rebooted by pressing  $\boxed{\text{ctrl}} + \boxed{\text{Att}} + \boxed{\text{Del}}$ , DOS searches the system disk for the CONFIG.SYS file. If DOS finds one, it reads the commands from the file and uses them to prepare the computer for operation.

#### configuration

- 1. The arrangement of a computer system or network as defined by the nature, number, and chief characteristics of its functional units. More specifically, the term configuration may refer to a hardware configuration or a software configuration.
- 2. The devices and programs that make up a system, subsystem or network.

#### connector

A device allowing the connection of various electrical elements. See edge connector.

#### conventional memory

(see base memory)

#### cps

Characters per second.

#### CPU

Central processing unit.

#### CRT

Cathode ray tube.

#### CSA 22.2 # 220

Canadian Standards Association Standard for Safety of Information Processing and Business Equipment.

#### cursor

- 1. In computer graphics, a movable marker that is used to indicate position on a display.
- 2. A displayed symbol that acts as a marker to help the user locate a point in text, in a system command, or in storage.
- 3. A movable spot of light on the screen of a display device, usually indicating where the next character is to be entered, replaced, or deleted.

#### cycle time

Defines the minimum amount of time in which subsequent accesses to a DRAM device can occur.

#### cylinder

All fixed disk or diskette tracks that can be read or written without moving the disk drive or diskette drive read/write mechanism

D

#### data base

A collection of data that can be immediately accessed and operated upon by a data processing system for a specific purpose.

#### dB

(see Decibel)

#### DC

Direct current.

#### decibel

- 1. A unit that expresses the ratio of two power levels on a logarithmic scale.
- 2. A unit for measuring relative power.

#### **Deutsche Industrie Norm (DIN)**

- 1. German Industrial Norm.
- 2. The committee that sets German dimension standards.

#### diagnostic

Pertaining to the detection and isolation of a malfunction or mistake.

#### digital

Pertaining to data in the form of digits. Contrast with analog.

#### DIN

Deutsche Industrie Norm.

#### **DIN connector**

One of the connectors specified by the DIN committee.

#### DIP

Dual in-line package. DIPs have pins in two parallel rows. The pins are spaced 1/10 inch apart. (See also DIP switch.)

#### **DIP** switch

One of a set of small switches mounted in a dual in-line package.

#### direct current (dc)

A current that always flows in one direction.

#### direct memory access (DMA)

A method of transferring data between main storage and I/O devices that does not require processor intervention.

#### disable

To stop the operation of a circuit or device; specifically applied to communications ports.

#### disabled

Pertaining to a state of a processing unit that prevents the occurrence of certain types of interruptions. Synonymous with masked.

#### disk

Loosely, a magnetic disk.

#### disk drive

A device for storing data on and retrieving data from a fixed disk or diskette.

#### diskette

A thin, flexible magnetic disk, permanently sealed in a protective jacket, that is used to store information. Synonymous with floppy and flexible disk. Most commonly available in 5.25-inch and 3.5-inch sizes.

#### display

- 1. A visual presentation of data.
- 2. A device for visual presentation of information on any temporary character imaging device.
- 3. To present data visually.
- 4. See cathode ray tube.

#### DMA

Direct memory access.

#### DOS

Disk Operating System. (see operating system)

#### double precision

Pertaining to the use of two computer words to represent a number in accordance with the required precision. Contrast with single precision.

#### DRAM

Dynamic RAM. A type of RAM comprised of capacitive cells that require periodic refresh to maintain data. While the DRAM is a slower than the SRAM, its cell is much smaller. This enables the DRAM to be a higher density device and generally less expensive.

#### drop card

Drop cards are expansion boards that gain extra surface area by dropping down immediately after the 8-bit edge connector. Drop cards are not compatible in 16-bit and 32-bit expansion slots because the dropped portion of the card interferes with the unused connectors in these longer slots.

#### dual in-line package (DIP)

A widely used container for an integrated circuit.

#### dynamic memory

Random access memory (RAM). Read/write memory. See DRAM.

# Ε

#### edge connector

A terminal block with a number of contacts attached to the edge of a printed-circuit board to facilitate plugging into a foundation circuit.

#### EIA

Electronic Industries Association.

#### EMI

Electromagnetic Interference.

#### enable

To initiate the operation of a circuit or device; specifically applied to communications ports.

#### **EPROM**

Erasable programmable read-only memory. A PROM that allows the user to change its code.

#### E<sup>2</sup>PROM

Electrically erasable programmable read-only memory. An EPROM which allows the user to change its code by means of appropriate electrical signals.

#### ESDI

Enhanced Small Device Interface, which achieves faster throughput than standard fixed disk controllers by shifting functionality to the fixed disk drive.

#### expanded memory

Certain expansion boards can provide additional memory to a personal computer. Expanded memory is distinguished from conventional memory in that it cannot be addressed directly by DOS but must be accessed through the expanded memory manager. It is used directly by application programs such as Symphony and Framework. Contrast with extended memory.

#### expansion slot

A series of connectors mounted on the board into which expansion boards can be inserted. Depending upon the system model, the type and number of expansion slots will vary.

#### extended memory

Memory whose addresses start at 1M and which can be accessed only when the processor is running in protected mode. Extended memory can be used by operating systems, such as UNIX, that run in protected mode, and by certain DOS programs, such as the RAMDRIVE.SYS virtual disk, that switch in and out of protected mode to perform special operations. Ordinary DOS applications cannot directly access extended memory.

# F

#### Fahrenheit (F)

A temperature scale. Contrast with Celsius (C).

#### falling edge

Synonym for negative-going edge.

#### fast paged mode

A dynamic memory mode of operation that allows successive addresses to the same DRAM page (defined by the row addresses strobed (RAS) into the devices by simply changing the column addresses. In this mode, RAS is held active and the various accesses are initiated by strobing the new column addresses with the falling edge of CAS. The mode is available in CMOS parts and allows fewer cycle times.

#### FCC

Federal Communications Commission.

#### field

- 1. In a record, a specified area used for a particular category of data.
- 2. In a data base, the smallest unit of data that can be referred to by name.

#### firmware

- 1. Instructions or programs stored permanently in read-only memory (ROM) and unchangeable.
- 2. Internal connections that permanently determine the function of a device or system.

#### fixed disk

A nonflexible, flat, circular plate with a magnetizable surface layer on which data can be stored by magnetic recording. Synonymous with hard disk. Fixed disks are permanently mounted within a fixed disk drive.

#### fixed disk drive

A computer unit that consists of nonremovable magnetic disks, and a device for storing and retrieving data from the disks. Synonymous with hard disk drive.

#### flexible disk

See diskette.

#### floppy disk

Synonym for flexible disk. See diskette.

#### floppy disk drive

A computer unit that can store and retrieve data from floppy disks. See diskette.

#### function keys

Keys that request actions but do not display or print characters. Included are the keys that normally produce a printed character, but when used with the code key produce a function instead. Compare with character key.

# G

#### G

A symbol used to represent the prefix giga. When describing computer storage capacity, common usage has made G synonymous with GB, G-byte or gigabyte.

#### GB

Abbreviation for gigabyte.

#### giga

A prefix normally used to indicate a quantity of 1,000,000,000. However, when referring to computer storage capacity, the prefix giga represents a quantity of 1,073,741,824 or 2 raised to the 30th power.

#### gigabyte

A term used when referring to computer storage capacity. A gigabyte is defined as 1,073,741,824 bytes.

#### gram (g)

A unit of weight equivalent to 0.035 ounces.

#### graphics

Ā type of data created from fundamental drawing units such as lines, splines, curves, polygons, and so forth.

# Η

#### hard disk

(See fixed disk.)

#### hardware

- 1. Physical equipment used in data processing, as opposed to programs, procedures, rules, and associated documentation.
- 2. Contrast with software.

#### head

A device that reads, writes, or erases data on a storage medium; for example, a small electromagnet used to read, write, or erase data on a magnetic disk.

#### header

A connector located on the board. Usually consisting of one or more rows of evenly-spaced pins.

#### Hertz (Hz)

A unit of frequency equal to one cycle per second.

#### hex

Common abbreviation for hexadecimal.

#### hexadecimal

- 1. Pertaining to a selection, choice, or condition that has 16 possible different values or states. These values or states are usually symbolized by the ten digits 0 through 9, and the six letters A through F.
- 2. Pertaining to a fixed radix numeration system having a radix of 16.

#### Hz

See Hertz.

# I

#### icon

Icon is a term used to describe graphic display symbols commonly used on video displays. A small symbol that can be easily identified with a device or function; e.g., a graphics symbol of a printer or keyboard. Selecting the icon will allow you to access the device or function it represents.

#### IEC 435

TUV certified in accordance with International Electrotechnical Commissions Standard for Safety of Information Technology Equipment.

#### IEC 950

TUV certified in accordance with International Electrotechnical Commissions Standard for Safety of Information Technology Equipment including Electrical Business Equipment.

#### input/output (I/O)

- Pertaining to a device or to a channel that may be involved in an input process and, at a different time, in an output process. Input/output may be used in place of input/output data, input/output signal, and input/output terminals, when such usage is clear in a given context.
- 2. Pertaining to a device whose parts can be performing an input process and an output process at the same time.
- 3. Pertaining to either input or output, or both.

#### instruction

A statement that specifies an operation to be performed by the computer, along with the values or locations of operands, if any exist. This statement represents the programmer's request to the processor to perform a specific operation.

#### instruction set

The set of instructions of a computer, of a programming language, or of the programming languages in a programming system.

#### interface

A device that alters or converts actual electrical signals between distinct devices, programs, or systems.

#### interleave

To arrange parts of one sequence of things or events so that they alternate with parts of one or more other sequences of the same nature and so that each sequence retains its identity.

#### interrupt

- 1. A suspension of a process, such as the execution of a computer program, caused by an event external to that process and performed in such a way that the process can be resumed.
- 2. In a data transmission, to take an action at a receiving station that causes the transmitting station to terminate a transmission.
- 3. Synonymous with interruption.

#### I/O

Input/Output.

# K

#### К

A symbol used to represent kilobyte, a computer storage quantity representing 1024 bytes, wherein 1024 is equal to 2 raised to the 10th power. Common usage has made it synonymous with KB, Kbyte or kilobyte. See kilobyte. Contrast with k.

#### k

A symbol used to represent the prefix kilo; 1,000.

#### KB

Abbreviation for kilobyte.

#### Kb

A symbol used to represent kilobit, a computer storage quantity representing 1024 bits, wherein 1024 is equal to 2 raised to the 10th power.

#### keylock

A device that can deactivate a keyboard (if implemented) and locks the cover on for security.

#### kilo

A prefix used to indicate a quantity of 1000. Abbreviation symbol k. Contrast with K.

#### kilobyte

A term used when referring to computer storage capacity. A kilobyte is defined as 1024 bytes. Note that in all other usages, the prefix kilo (k) indicates a quantity of 1,000.

#### kilogram (kg)

1000 grams.

#### kilohertz (kHz)

1000 Hertz.
## L

## leading edge

The first occurring edge of a pulse.

## LIM

Lotus/Intel/Microsoft Expanded Memory Manager specification.

## LED

Light-emitting diode.

## LPT1, LPT2, LPT3

These are the names DOS assigns to the parallel printer ports in a system. The three names reflect the fact that DOS permits as many as three parallel printer ports in a system.

# M

## Μ

A symbol used to represent the prefix mega. When describing computer storage capacity, common usage has made M synonymous with MB, Mbyte or megabyte. See mega.

## m

- 1. Prefix milli; 0.001.
- 2. Meter.

## mA

Milliampere; 0.001 ampere.

## machine language

A language that can be used directly by a computer without intermediate processing.

## magnetic disk

À flat circular plate with a magnetizable surface layer on which data can be stored by magnetic recording.

## main storage

- 1. Program-addressable storage from which instructions and other data can be loaded directly into registers for subsequent execution or processing.
- 2. Contrast with mass storage.

## mapping

Pertaining to the geographic location for a resource within the address space.

#### masked

Synonym for disabled.

#### mass storage

Auxiliary storage in a computer system as differentiated from RAM. Mass storage most commonly refers to floppy and fixed disks and magnetic tape.

### MB

Abbreviation for megabyte.

### Mb

A symbol used to represent megabit, a computer storage quantity representing 1,048,576 bits, wherein 1,048,576 is equal to 2 raised to the 20th power.

#### mega

A prefix normally used to indicate a quantity of 1,000,000. However, when referring to computer storage capacity, the prefix mega represents a quantity of 1,048,576 or 2 raised to the 20th power.

### megabyte

A term used when referring to computer storage capacity. A megabyte is defined as 1,048,576 bytes.

#### memory

Storage on electric memory such as random access memory (RAM), read-only memory (ROM), or CPU registers.

#### MFM

Modified frequency modulation.

#### MHz

Megahertz; 1,000,000 Hertz.

#### micro (µ)

Prefix 0.000 001.

#### microprocessor

An integrated circuit that accepts coded instructions for execution; the instructions may be entered, integrated, or stored internally.

#### microsecond (µs)

0.000 001 second.

#### modified frequency modulation (MFM)

The process of varying the amplitude and frequency of the write signal. MFM pertains to the number of bytes of storage that can be stored on the recording media. The number of bytes is twice the number contained in the same unit area of recording media at single density. MFM recording is commonly used on floppy- and fixed disk drives.

## monito<del>r</del>

- 1. A device for visual presentation of information as temporary images. A video display.
- 2. Synonym for cathode ray tube display (CRT display).

## Ν

nanosecond (ns)

0.000 000 001 second.

### negative-going edge

The edge of a pulse or signal changing in a negative direction. Synonymous with falling edge.

## negative true

Synonym for active low.

### network

A group of computers connected and configured such that they can share resources.

#### nonrecoverable error

An error that makes recovery impossible without the use of recovery techniques external to the computer program run.

#### ns

nanosecond; 0.000 000 001 second.

## 0

## OEM

Original Equipment Manufacturer.

## offline

Pertaining to the operation of a functional unit without the continual control of a computer.

## online

Pertaining to the operation of a functional unit under the continual control of a computer.

## operating system

Software that controls the execution of programs; an operating system may provide services such as resource allocation, scheduling, input/output control, and data management.

## Р

### paged mode

The same basic functionality as fast paged-mode, except that the access time is the same as a normal RAS/CAS access. This mode is a feature on NMOS-type DRAM parts.

### PAL

Program array logic

### parallel

- 1. Pertaining to the concurrent or simultaneous operation of two or more devices, or to the concurrent performance of two or more activities.
- 2. Pertaining to the concurrent or simultaneous occurrence of two or more related activities in multiple devices or channels.
- 3. Pertaining to the simultaneity of two or more processes.
- 4. Pertaining to the simultaneous processing of the individual parts of a whole, such as the bits of a character and the characters of a word, using separate facilities for the various parts.
- 5. An alternative to serial.

#### parameter

- 1. A variable that is given a constant value for a specified application and that may denote the application.
- 2. A name in a procedure that is used to refer to an argument passed to that procedure.

#### pel

Picture element.

### picture element (pel)

In computer graphics, the smallest element of a display space that can be independently assigned color and intensity. Synonymous with pixel.

#### pixel

The smallest displayable unit on a monitor or picture tube element. Synonymous with pel.

### platform system

A basic OEM product-line system which combines computers or computer subsystems with special, unique, and proprietary hardware and/or software for added value.

#### port

An access point for data entry or exit.

#### positive-going edge

The edge of a pulse or signal changing in a positive direction. Synonymous with rising edge.

#### positive true

Synonym for active high.

#### POST

Acronym for power-on self test.

#### power-on self test

A series of diagnostic tests that are run each time the computer's power is turned on. See POST.

#### power supply

A device that produces the power needed to operate electronic equipment.

#### precision

In science, a measure of the ability to differentiate quantities; the degree of agreement of repeated measurements of a quantity. Not to be confused with accuracy.

#### printed circuit

A pattern of conductors (corresponding to the wiring of an electronic circuit) formed on a board of insulating material.

#### printed-circuit board

Usually a copper-clad fiberglass board used to make a printed circuit. Also, refers to a board on which a printed circuit has been made.

#### processing unit

A functional unit that consists of one or more processors and all or part of internal memory.

#### processor

- 1. In a computer, a functional unit that interprets and executes instructions.
- 2. A functional unit, a part of another unit such as a terminal or processing unit, that interprets and executes instructions. (see microprocessor)

#### program

A file containing a set of instructions conforming to a particular programming language syntax.

#### PROM

Programmable read-only memory. A type of ROM that contains a programmed set of code. A PROM code cannot be changed once programmed. See also EPROM, E<sup>2</sup>PROM and ROM.

#### protected mode

A mode of the 80386 microprocessor enabling it to provide advanced features, such as accessing large amounts of memory and enforcing hardware protection of memory segments. Current versions of DOS do not support protected mode operation, except for special utilities such as the RAMDRIVE.SYS virtual disk.

## R

## RAM

Random access memory. Read/write memory.

## RAS

Row address strobe; a technique used in dynamic RAM addressing.

## RAS/CAS

A mode of DRAM operation where every access is begun by strobing the row addresses with RAS and column addresses with CAS.

#### raster

In computer graphics, a predetermined pattern of lines that provides uniform coverage of a display space.

#### read

To acquire or interpret data from a storage device, from a data medium, or from another source.

#### read-only memory (ROM)

A storage device whose contents cannot be modified. The memory is retained when power is removed.

#### recoverable error

An error condition that allows continued execution of a program.

#### register

- A storage device, having a specified storage capacity such as a bit, a byte, or a computer word, and usually intended for a special purpose.
- 2. A storage device in which specific data is stored.

#### reverse video

A form of highlighting a character, field, or cursor by reversing the color of the character, field, or cursor with its background; for example, changing a red character on a black background to a black character on a red background.

### RFI

Radio frequency interference.

#### ROM

Read-only memory. See also PROM, EPROM, and E<sup>2</sup>PROM.

#### **ROM BIOS**

The ROM resident basic input/output (BIOS) system which controls the major I/O devices in a computer system.

#### RS-232C

A standard by the Electronics Industries Association (EIA) for serial communication between computers and external equipment.

# S

## scratch disk

A scratch disk is usually a formatted floppy disk that can be used for test purposes. A floppy disk that contains no information of value. If data on a scratch disk is lost or destroyed during tests, it is of no consequence.

## sector

That part of a track or band on a magnetic drum, a magnetic disk, or a disk pack that can be accessed by the magnetic heads in the course of a predetermined rotational displacement of the particular device.

## serial

- 1. Pertaining to the sequential performance of two or more activities in a single device. The modifiers serial and parallel usually refer to devices, as opposed to sequential and consecutive, which refer to processes.
- 2. Pertaining to the sequential or consecutive occurrence of two or more related activities in a single device or channel.
- 3. Pertaining to the sequential processing of the individual parts of a whole, using the same facilities for successive parts.
- 4. An alternative to parallel.

## setup

- 1. In a computer that consists of an assembly of individual computing units, the arrangement of interconnections between the units, and the adjustments needed for the computer to operate.
- 2. The preparation of the system for normal operation.

## shadow memory

A portion of RAM to which selected BIOS information is copied from ROM. This ROM-to-RAM copying technique is referred to as shadowing. Shadow memory is write-protected and often has the same addresses as the original ROM locations. Shadowing greatly enhances system performance because ROM information is available from fast 32-bit RAM chips instead of the slower ROM chips.

## signal

A variation of physical quantity, used to convey data.

## SIMM

Single in-line memory module. A small plug-in board containing nine DRAM chips. A SIMM DRAM chip is organized in a specific configuration; i.e.  $256Kb \times 1$  or  $1Mb \times 1$  organization. For example, eight  $256Kb \times 1$  DRAM devices combine to form 256K of memory. The ninth device provides parity checking.

### single precision

Pertaining to the use of one computer word to represent a number in accordance with the required precision. Contrast with double precision and precision.

### software

- 1. Computer programs, procedures, and rules concerned with the operation of a data processing system.
- 2. Contrast with hardware.

## SRAM

Static RAM. RAM comprised of static RAM chips. Unlike DRAMs, SRAMs require no refresh and are faster devices. The SRAM cell is larger than the DRAM cell and for this reason, SRAMs are lower density devices.

#### static column

A mode of operation of DRAM operation that allows successive accesses to the same DRAM page (defined by the row addresses initially strobed into the devices) by simply changing the column addresses. This mode differs from fast paged-mode because both RAS and CAS are held active, whereas CAS is strobed in fast paged-mode. The access time is limited to the address access time of the part as new column addresses are presented.

#### static memory

RAM using flip-flops as the memory elements. Data is retained as long as power is applied to the flip-flops. Contrast with dynamic memory.

#### storage

- 1. A storage device.
- 2. A device, or part of a device that can retain data.
- 3. The retention of data in a storage device.
- 4. The placement of data into a storage device.

#### synchronization

The process of adjusting the corresponding significant instants of two signals to obtain the desired phase relationship between these instants.

#### synchronous

- 1. Data transmission in which the time of transmission occurrence of each signal representing a bit is related to a fixed time frame.
- 2. Data transmission in which the sending and receiving devices are operating continuously at substantially the same frequency and are maintained in a desired phase relationship by means of correction.

Contrast with asynchronous.

### Glossary

## Т

## Т

A symbol used to represent the prefix tera. When describing computer storage capacity, common usage has made T synonymous with TB, Tbyte or terabyte.

## ТΒ

Abbreviation for terabyte.

## tera

A prefix normally used to indicate a quantity of 1,000,000,000. However, when referring to computer storage capacity, the prefix tera represents a quantity of 1,099,571,627,300 or 2 raised to the 40th power.

### terabyte

A term used when referring to computer storage capacity. A terabyte is defined as 1,099,571,627,300 bytes.

## tpi

Tracks per inch. A specification used in formatting floppy disks and fixed disks.

## TTL

Transistor-transistor logic. A popular logic circuit family that uses multiple-emitter transistors.

## track

- 1. The path or one of the set of paths, parallel to the reference edge on a data medium, associated with a single reading or writing component as the data medium moves past the component.
- 2. The portion of a moving data medium such as a drum, or disk, that is accessible to a given reading head position.

## trailing edge

The second edge of a pulse.

## TUV

Technischer Ueberwachungs-Verein. TUV is an testing organization that evaluates and certifies electronic data processing equipment to specific International safety standards.

## typematic key

A key that repeats its function multiple times when held down.

## U

## UL 478

Underwriter Laboratories Standard for Safety of Information Processing and Business Equipment.

## V

## v

Volt.

## VAC

Volts (alternating current).

## VDE 0806/IEC 380

TUV certified in accordance with International Electrotechnical Commissions Standard for Safety of Electrical Energized Office Machines.

## VDE 0871

Verband Deutscher Electrotechnikes Specification for EMI Suppression.

## VDC

Volts (direct current).

## video

Computer data or graphics displayed on a CRT, monitor, or display.

## video adapter

A special board that provides a suitable interface between a computer and a video display device such as a CRT or monitor. A video controller.

## video controller

A special board that provides a suitable interface between a computer and a video display device such as a CRT or monitor. A video adapter.

## video display

A device for visual presentation of information as temporary images. A monitor. See also CRT.

#### virtual address

A 32-bit address on the internal bus intended to be translated by memory management.

#### volt

The basic unit of electric pressure. The potential that causes electrons to flow through a circuit.

## W

## w

Watt.

## Watt (W)

The basic unit of electric power.

## word

A character string or bit string considered as an entity in computer architecture.

## write

To make a permanent or transient recording of data in a storage device or on data medium.

## write precompensation

The varying of the timing of the head current from the outer tracks to the inner tracks of the diskette to keep a constant write signal.

intel

# Index

387 coprocessor 2-11, 2-13 binary floating-point arithmetic 2-10 install I-5 interrupts 2-12
1287 real-time clock (RTC) module 9-1
8237A DMA controllers 8-1
8254 programmable interval timer 1-7
8259 programmable interrupt controllers 1-7
82510 serial communication controller 10-1

## A

Access ports B-29 Address map RTC 9-3,F-8 AT32 4-1 AT32 bus 2-15, 7-7, 13-12, H-3 buffers 2-16 Auto-initialization 8-5, 8-11, 8-15

## В

Binary floating-point arithmetic 2-10 BIOS 1-10, 3-1, 7-7, 8-8, 9-21, 13-2, 13-11, B-1

clock services B-50, B-53 coprocessor interrupt B-54 disk H/W interrupt B-3 equipment determination B-13 fixed disk H/W interrupt B-54 fixed disk I/O B-21, B-28 floppy disk drive I/O B-14, B-20 keyboard H/W interrupt B-3 keyboard I/O B-42, B-47 memory size determination B-14 non-maskable interrupt B-1 print screen B-2 printer I/O B-48, B-49 real-time clock B-54 RS-232 I/O B-29, 32 system boot B-50 system service routines B-33, B-42 system timer H/W interrupt B-2 video I/O B-4, B-12 Bus timing 2-10 control unit 2-7

## С

Cache memory 2-14, 2-15, 13-11 read requests 2-15 write requests 2-16 Cache tag 2-15 Central processing core 2-1 Changing the system speed 1-6, D-1 keyboard method D-2 software method D-3 using Setup D-2 Clock speed changing 13-9 Configuration 13-14 Connector pinouts CPU H-1 serial port H-7 Control port 61H F-4 78H F-5 79H F-6 Counters PIT 6-2 Counting element (CE) 6-2, 6-4 CPU 1-6, 2-3, 2-10, 2-15, 8-1, 9-3, 9-5, 9-7, 9-13, D-1, H-1 address paging unit 2-7 addressable physical memory 2-3 bus control unit 2-7 bus cycle initiation 2-16 bus timing 2-10 core control logic 2-16 numeric coprocessors 2-10 pre-decode unit 2-7 pre-fetch unit 2-7 protected mode 2-3 real mode 2-3 segmentation unit 2-7 signal definitions 2-6 virtual memory 2-3 virtual-8086 mode 2-4 CPU/cache control AT (CAT) 2-16

## D

Deturbo mode D-1, D-4 Dimensions A-3 Direct Memory Access 1-7 DMA 8-1 DMA controller 8-1

active cycle 8-4 address registers 8-10, 8-11 auto-initialization 8-5, 8-11, 8-15 channels 8-7, F-8 command register 8-12 count registers 8-10, 8-11 idle cvcle 8-4 internal registers 8-9 mask register 8-15 mode register 8-14 modes 8-4 block-transfer 8-5 cascade 8-6 demand-transfer 8-5 single-transfer 8-5 page registers 8-7, 8-8, 8-20 program-control registers 8-12 programming 8-8, 8-20 request register 8-15 signals 8-4, 8-5, 8-6, 8-8 software commands 8-19 status register 8-17 temporary register 8-19 transfers 8-8, 8-9, 8-11, 8-12 DMA cycles 5-7, 5-13 DRAM 3-1

## Ε

Environment A-3 Error beep messages E-12 Error messages setup 13-14 Execution unit 2-7 Expansion memory 3-1, 3-4, 9-17 Expansion slots 1-8, A-4 J1 1-8 J2 1-8 J3 1-8 J4 1-8 J5 1-8 J6 1-8, 4-2 J7 1-8, 4-2

Intel386™ MicroComputer Model 302 Board

J8 1-8 Extended memory 9-21, B-38

# I

1/0 address 5-4 address map F-3 cycles 5-6, 5-10 I/O ports COM1 1-8 COM2 1-8 LPT1 1-8 LPT2 1-8 ICW 7-9 Initialization sequence 7-12 Interrupts 9-3 maskable interrupt 7-5 NMI 2-12, 7-5 PIC 7-5, 15 request levels 10-1, 10-2 ISA bus 1-7, 3-1, 3-5, 4-1, H-4 address signals 5-6, 5-7 bus agents 5-2, 5-3 central control signals 5-11, 5-12 cycle control signals 5-9, 5-11 data signals 5-8 DMA signals 5-13 I/O address 5-4 map F-3 interrupt signals 5-13 memory address 5-4 power 5-14

# J

Jumpers C-1 monitor type C-5 parallel port C-6 printer acknowledge C-5 serial port C-6

## Κ

Keyboard controller connector 11-7 controller commands 11-6 data stream 11-8 data transfers 11-9, 11-11 input buffer 11-4, 11-5 input port 11-5 output buffer 11-4, 11-11 output port 11-5 scan codes 11-4, 11-8, 11-12 status register 11-3, 11-5, 11-11 Keylock interface connector J20 12-1

## Μ

Memory 9-17, 13-7 address 5-4 cache 2-14, 2-15, 13-11 cache memory 1-6 cache tag 2-15 cache tag memory 1-6 DMA 8-1 **DRAM 3-1** expansion 3-4 extended 9-21, B-38 extended memory configuration 13-7 parity error B-1 random access memory (RAM) 1-6, 3-3, 13-11, B-14 read-only memory (ROM) 1-6, 1-10, 13-2, 13-11 SIMM 3-3

SRAM 9-1 Memory map RTC 9-3, F-8

## Ν

NMI 2-12, 7-7, B-1 mask register 7-5 Numeric coprocessor 13-10, D-1, I-5 instruction set 2-10 registers 2-10 removal I-6

# 0

OCW 7-15 Onboard ROM 1-6

## P

Parallel port 1-8, 10-2, 10-3, 10-4, C-6, H-8 Parity error B-1 PIC 1-7 in-service register 7-4 interrupt mask register 7-4, 5 interrupt request register 7-4 priority resolver 7-4 programming ICW 7-8, 7-9 initialization sequence 7-12 OCW 7-8, 15 Pin assignments AT32 bus H-3 CPU H-2 ISA bus H-4, 5

keyboard H-9 parallel port H-8 serial port H-6 PIT 1-7, 12-2 counters 6-2 control register 6-4 functions 6-2 status register 6-4 counting element (CE) 6-2, 6-4 modes 6-1 programming 6-5 control register 043H 6-5 latch counter command 6-7 read-back command 6-8 read/write counter command 6-7 Ports access B-29 parallel 1-8, 10-2 input instructions 10-3 output instructions 10-3 registers 10-4 serial 1-8 connector J5 10-2 connector J6 10-2 interfacing 10-2 POST 1-9, 2-12, 13-1 configuration errors 13-2 memory test 13-1 reboot routine 13-1 startup message 13-1 POST and boot messages E-1 POST messages error E-9 error beep E-12, E-14 informational E-10 run-time E-11 Power requirements 302 board A-3 current drain A-5 expansion slots A-4 Programming DMA controller 8-8, 8-20 PIC 7-8, 12 PIT 6-5, 6-7, 6-8

## R

RAM 3-3, 13-11, B-14 Read requests 2-15 Real-time clock 1-7, 9-1 address map 9-4, F-9 addressable locations 9-3, F-8 battery 9-1, 9-12 bytes 9-11 CMOS RAM checksum byte 9-20 CPU speed byte 9-22 date century byte 9-21 diagnostic status byte 9-12 drive C extended byte 9-18 drive D extended byte 9-18 equipment byte 9-16 feature installed byte 9-18 fixed disk drive type byte 9-15 fixed disk type 48 parameter 9-19 fixed disk type 49 parameters 9-23 floppy disk drive type byte 9-14 low and high base memory bytes 9-17 low and high extended memory bytes 9-21 low and high memory expansion bytes 9-17 setup information byte 9-22 shadow and setup byte 9-20 shutdown status byte 9-13 format 9-6 initialization 9-5 memory map 9-2 operations 9-1 registers 9-7 status register A 9-7 status register B 9-8 status register C 9-10 status register D 9-11 update cycle 9-3

Refresh cycles 3-5, 5-4, 5-6, 5-8, 5-9, 5-11, 8-20 Reaisters address registers 8-10, 8-11 command register 8-12 count registers 8-10, 8-11 DMA internal registers 8-9 in-service register 7-4 interrupt mask register 7-4, 7-5 interrupt request 7-4 interrupt request register 7-4 mask register 8-15 mode register 8-14 numeric coprocessors 2-10 page registers 8-7, 8-8, 8-20 PIT 6-4, 6-5 program-control registers 8-12 request register 8-15 status register 8-17, 11-3, 11-5, 11-11 status register A 9-7 status register B 9-8 status register C 9-10 status register D 9-11 status registers 8-19 Reset interface 12-3 connector J18 12-3 hardware reset 12-3 keyboard reset 12-3 software reset 12-3 ROM 13-2, 13-11 RS-232-C serial communication ports 10-1 RTC 1-7

## S

Scan codes B-3 Serial port 1-8, 10-2, C-6, H-6 Setup program 1-9, 9-22, 13-2, D-2 512-640K 13-12 above 16M 13-12 AT32 bus 13-12

base memory 13-7 cache memory 13-11 changing options 13-4 computing extended memory 13-7 CPU speed 13-9 date 13-5 error messages 13-14 exiting 13-4, 13-13 extended memory 13-7 fixed disk drives 13-6 floppy disk drives 13-6 keyboard 13-9 monitor 13-8 numeric coprocessor 13-10 pre-boot setup 13-13 running 13-3 setup screen 1 13-3, 13-5 setup screen 2 13-10 speaker 13-13 system BIOS 13-11 time 13-5 video BIOS 13-11 SIMM 3-3 installing I-1 Speaker interface 12-2 connector J19 12-2 Specifications A-1 SRAM 9-1 System configuration C-1 System reboot procedure 13-1

## W

Weitek 3167 coprocessor 2-13

## Т

Transfer operations DMA controller 8-6, 8-8, 8-9, 8-11, 8-12 read 8-6 verify 8-6 write 8-6 Transfer operations keyboard controller 11-9, 11-11 Turbo mode D-1, D-5



INTEL CORPORATION 3065 Bowers Avenue Santa Clara, CA 95052-8130